

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two		To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotes¹ and endnotesⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

¹ In paged media, footnotes are usually displayed at the bottom of the text. However, in ebooks, a better paradigm is to make them clickable endnotes that the user can browse at her pleasure. This conversion is handled automatically by calibre.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>



Images



Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks in the text and are usually small in size. The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
2. Two

Multi-level Lists

1. One
 - 1.1. Two
 - 1.1.1. Three
 - 1.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1.1.3. Five

2. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- i. One
- ii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- iii. We now resume our normal programming
- iv. Four

3:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two		To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotes² and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

² In paged media, footnotes are usually displayed at the bottom of the text. However, in ebooks, a better paradigm is to make them clickable endnotes that the user can browse at her pleasure. This conversion is handled automatically by calibre.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8



Images



Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks in the text and are usually small in size. The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

3. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
4. Two

Multi-level Lists

3. One
 - 3.1. Two
 - 3.1.1. Three
 - 3.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 3.1.3. Five

4. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- v. One
- vi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- vii. We now resume our normal programming
- viii. Four

ⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱ and endnotesⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
2. Two

Multi-level Lists

1. One
 - 1.1. Two

-
- 1.1.1. Three
 - 1.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1.1.3. Five
2. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- i. One
- ii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- iii. We now resume our normal programming
- iv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

3. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
4. Two

Multi-level Lists

3. One
 - 3.1. Two
 - 3.1.1. Three
 - 3.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 3.1.3. Five

4. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- v. One
- vi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- vii. We now resume our normal programming
- viii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

5. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
6. Two

Multi-level Lists

5. One
 - 5.1. Two
 - 5.1.1. Three
 - 5.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 5.1.3. Five
 6. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ix. One
- x. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- xi. We now resume our normal programming
- xii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

7. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
8. Two

Multi-level Lists

7. One
 - 7.1. Two
 - 7.1.1. Three
 - 7.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 7.1.3. Five

8. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- xiii. One
- xiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- xv. We now resume our normal programming
- xvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

9. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
10. Two

Multi-level Lists

9. One
 - 9.1. Two
 - 9.1.1. Three
 - 9.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 9.1.3. Five
 10. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xvii. One

xviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xix. We now resume our normal programming

xx. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

11. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
12. Two

Multi-level Lists

11. One
 - 11.1. Two
 - 11.1.1. Three
 - 11.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 11.1.3. Five

12. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xxi. One

xxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xxiii. We now resume our normal programming

xxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

13. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
14. Two

Multi-level Lists

13. One
 - 13.1. Two
 - 13.1.1. Three
 - 13.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 13.1.3. Five
14. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xxv. One

xxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xxvii. We now resume our normal programming

xxviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

15. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
16. Two

Multi-level Lists

15. One
 - 15.1. Two
 - 15.1.1. Three
 - 15.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 15.1.3. Five

16. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xxix. One

xxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xxxi. We now resume our normal programming

xxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

17. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
18. Two

Multi-level Lists

17. One
 - 17.1. Two
 - 17.1.1. Three
 - 17.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 17.1.3. Five
18. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xxxiii. One

xxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xxxv. We now resume our normal programming

xxxvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

19. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
20. Two

Multi-level Lists

19. One
 - 19.1. Two
 - 19.1.1. Three
 - 19.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 19.1.3. Five

20. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xxxvii. One

xxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xxxix. We now resume our normal programming

xl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

21. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
22. Two

Multi-level Lists

21. One
 - 21.1. Two
 - 21.1.1. Three
 - 21.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 21.1.3. Five
22. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xli. One

xlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xliii. We now resume our normal programming

xliv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

23. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
24. Two

Multi-level Lists

23. One
 - 23.1. Two
 - 23.1.1. Three
 - 23.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 23.1.3. Five

24. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xliv. One

xlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xlvii. We now resume our normal programming

xlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

25. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
26. Two

Multi-level Lists

25. One
 - 25.1. Two
 - 25.1.1. Three
 - 25.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 25.1.3. Five
26. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xlix. One

l. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

li. We now resume our normal programming

lii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

27. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
28. Two

Multi-level Lists

27. One
 - 27.1. Two
 - 27.1.1. Three
 - 27.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 27.1.3. Five

28. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

liii. One

liv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lv. We now resume our normal programming

lvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

29. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
30. Two

Multi-level Lists

29. One
 - 29.1. Two
 - 29.1.1. Three
 - 29.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 29.1.3. Five
30. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lvii. One

lviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lix. We now resume our normal programming

lx. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

31. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
32. Two

Multi-level Lists

31. One
 - 31.1. Two
 - 31.1.1. Three
 - 31.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 31.1.3. Five

32. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- lxi. One
- lxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- lxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- lxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

33. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
34. Two

Multi-level Lists

33. One
 - 33.1. Two
 - 33.1.1. Three
 - 33.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 33.1.3. Five
34. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxv. One

lxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lxvii. We now resume our normal programming

lxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

35. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
36. Two

Multi-level Lists

35. One
 - 35.1. Two
 - 35.1.1. Three
 - 35.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 35.1.3. Five

36. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxix. One

lxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lxxi. We now resume our normal programming

lxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

37. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
38. Two

Multi-level Lists

37. One
 - 37.1. Two
 - 37.1.1. Three
 - 37.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 37.1.3. Five
38. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxxiii. One

lxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lxxv. We now resume our normal programming

lxxvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

39. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
40. Two

Multi-level Lists

39. One
 - 39.1. Two
 - 39.1.1. Three
 - 39.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 39.1.3. Five

40. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxxvii. One

lxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lxxix. We now resume our normal programming

lxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

41. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
42. Two

Multi-level Lists

41. One
 - 41.1. Two
 - 41.1.1. Three
 - 41.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 41.1.3. Five
42. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxxxi. One

lxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

lxxxiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

43. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
44. Two

Multi-level Lists

43. One
 - 43.1. Two
 - 43.1.1. Three
 - 43.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 43.1.3. Five

44. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxxxv. One

lxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

lxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

lxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

45. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
46. Two

Multi-level Lists

45. One
 - 45.1. Two
 - 45.1.1. Three
 - 45.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 45.1.3. Five
46. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

lxxxix. One

xc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xcii. We now resume our normal programming

xciii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

47. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
48. Two

Multi-level Lists

47. One
 - 47.1. Two
 - 47.1.1. Three
 - 47.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 47.1.3. Five

48. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xciii. One

xciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xcv. We now resume our normal programming

xcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

49. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
50. Two

Multi-level Lists

49. One
 - 49.1. Two
 - 49.1.1. Three
 - 49.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 49.1.3. Five
50. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

xcvii. One

xcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

xcix. We now resume our normal programming

c. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

51. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
52. Two

Multi-level Lists

51. One
 - 51.1. Two
 - 51.1.1. Three
 - 51.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 51.1.3. Five

52. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ci. One
- cii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ciii. We now resume our normal programming
- civ. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

53. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
54. Two

Multi-level Lists

53. One
 - 53.1. Two
 - 53.1.1. Three
 - 53.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 53.1.3. Five
54. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cv. One

cvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cvii. We now resume our normal programming

cviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 55. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 56. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 55. One
 - 55.1. Two
 - 55.1.1. Three
 - 55.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 55.1.3. Five

56. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cix. One
- cx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

57. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
58. Two

Multi-level Lists

57. One
 - 57.1. Two
 - 57.1.1. Three
 - 57.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 57.1.3. Five
58. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxiii. One

cxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxv. We now resume our normal programming

cxvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 59. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 60. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 59. One
 - 59.1. Two
 - 59.1.1. Three
 - 59.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 59.1.3. Five

60. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxvii. One

cxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxix. We now resume our normal programming

cxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

61. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
62. Two

Multi-level Lists

61. One
 - 61.1. Two
 - 61.1.1. Three
 - 61.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 61.1.3. Five
62. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxxi. One

cxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

cxxiv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

63. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
64. Two

Multi-level Lists

63. One
 - 63.1. Two
 - 63.1.1. Three
 - 63.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 63.1.3. Five

64. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxxv. One

cxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

cxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

65. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
66. Two

Multi-level Lists

65. One
 - 65.1. Two

65.1.1. Three

65.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

65.1.3. Five

66. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxxix. One

cxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

cxxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

67. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
68. Two

Multi-level Lists

67. One
 - 67.1. Two
 - 67.1.1. Three
 - 67.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 67.1.3. Five

68. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxxxiii. One

cxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

cxxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

69. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
70. Two

Multi-level Lists

69. One
 - 69.1. Two
 - 69.1.1. Three
 - 69.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 69.1.3. Five
70. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxxxvii. One

cxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

cxl. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

71. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
72. Two

Multi-level Lists

71. One
 - 71.1. Two
 - 71.1.1. Three
 - 71.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 71.1.3. Five

72. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxli. One

cxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxliii. We now resume our normal programming

cxliv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

73. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

74. Two

Multi-level Lists

73. One

73.1. Two

73.1.1. Three

73.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

73.1.3. Five

74. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxlv. One

cxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

cxlviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 75. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 76. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 75. One
 - 75.1. Two
 - 75.1.1. Three
 - 75.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 75.1.3. Five

76. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cxlix. One
- cl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cli. We now resume our normal programming
- clii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

77. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
78. Two

Multi-level Lists

77. One
 - 77.1. Two
 - 77.1.1. Three
 - 77.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 77.1.3. Five
78. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cliii. One

cliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clv. We now resume our normal programming

clvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

79. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
80. Two

Multi-level Lists

79. One
- 79.1. Two
- 79.1.1. Three
- 79.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 79.1.3. Five

80. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clvii. One

clviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clix. We now resume our normal programming

clx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

81. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
82. Two

Multi-level Lists

81. One
 - 81.1. Two
 - 81.1.1. Three
 - 81.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 81.1.3. Five
82. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxi. One

clxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxiii. We now resume our normal programming

clxiv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

83. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
84. Two

Multi-level Lists

83. One
 - 83.1. Two
 - 83.1.1. Three
 - 83.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 83.1.3. Five

84. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxv. One

clxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxvii. We now resume our normal programming

clxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

85. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
86. Two

Multi-level Lists

85. One
 - 85.1. Two
 - 85.1.1. Three
 - 85.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 85.1.3. Five
86. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxix. One

clxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxxi. We now resume our normal programming

clxxii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

87. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
88. Two

Multi-level Lists

87. One
 - 87.1. Two
 - 87.1.1. Three
 - 87.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 87.1.3. Five

88. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxxiii. One

clxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxxv. We now resume our normal programming

clxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

89. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
90. Two

Multi-level Lists

89. One
 - 89.1. Two
 - 89.1.1. Three
 - 89.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 89.1.3. Five
90. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxxvii. One

clxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxxix. We now resume our normal programming

clxxx. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

91. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
92. Two

Multi-level Lists

91. One
 - 91.1. Two
 - 91.1.1. Three
 - 91.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 91.1.3. Five

92. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxxxi. One

clxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

clxxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

93. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
94. Two

Multi-level Lists

93. One
 - 93.1. Two
 - 93.1.1. Three
 - 93.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 93.1.3. Five
94. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxxxv. One

clxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

clxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

clxxxviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

95. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
96. Two

Multi-level Lists

95. One
 - 95.1. Two
 - 95.1.1. Three
 - 95.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 95.1.3. Five

96. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

clxxxix. One

cxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxc. We now resume our normal programming

cxcii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

97. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
98. Two

Multi-level Lists

97. One
 - 97.1. Two
 - 97.1.1. Three
 - 97.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 97.1.3. Five
98. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cxciii. One

cxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cxcv. We now resume our normal programming

cxcvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

99. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
100. Two

Multi-level Lists

99. One
 - 99.1. Two
 - 99.1.1. Three
 - 99.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 99.1.3. Five
 100. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cxcvii. One
- cxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- cc. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

101. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
102. Two

Multi-level Lists

101. One
 - 101.1. Two
 - 101.1.1. Three
 - 101.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 101.1.3. Five
 102. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cci. One

ccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cciii. We now resume our normal programming

cciv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

103. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
104. Two

Multi-level Lists

103. One
 - 103.1. Two
 - 103.1.1. Three
 - 103.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 103.1.3. Five
 104. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccv. One
- ccvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccvii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

105. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
106. Two

Multi-level Lists

105. One
 - 105.1. Two
 - 105.1.1. Three
 - 105.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 105.1.3. Five
 106. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccix. One

ccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxi. We now resume our normal programming

ccxii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

107. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
108. Two

Multi-level Lists

107. One
 - 107.1. Two
 - 107.1.1. Three
 - 107.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 107.1.3. Five
 108. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccxiii. One
- ccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccxv. We now resume our normal programming
- ccxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

109. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
110. Two

Multi-level Lists

109. One
 - 109.1. Two
 - 109.1.1. Three
 - 109.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 109.1.3. Five
 110. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccxvii. One

ccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxix. We now resume our normal programming

ccxx. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

111. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
112. Two

Multi-level Lists

111. One
 - 111.1. Two
 - 111.1.1. Three
 - 111.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 111.1.3. Five
 112. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccxxi. One
- ccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

113. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
114. Two

Multi-level Lists

113. One
 - 113.1. Two
 - 113.1.1. Three
 - 113.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 113.1.3. Five
 114. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccxxv. One

ccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

ccxxviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

115. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
116. Two

Multi-level Lists

115. One
 - 115.1. Two
 - 115.1.1. Three
 - 115.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 115.1.3. Five
 116. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccxxix. One
- ccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- ccxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

117. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
118. Two

Multi-level Lists

117. One
 - 117.1. Two
 - 117.1.1. Three
 - 117.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 117.1.3. Five
118. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccxxxiii. One

ccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

ccxxxvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

119. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
120. Two

Multi-level Lists

119. One
 - 119.1. Two
 - 119.1.1. Three
 - 119.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 119.1.3. Five
 120. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccxxxvii. One
- ccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- ccxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

121. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
122. Two

Multi-level Lists

121. One
 - 121.1. Two
 - 121.1.1. Three
 - 121.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 121.1.3. Five
 122. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccxli. One

ccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxlili. We now resume our normal programming

ccxliv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

123. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
124. Two

Multi-level Lists

123. One
 - 123.1. Two
 - 123.1.1. Three
 - 123.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 123.1.3. Five
 124. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccxlv. One
- ccxlvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- ccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccxlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

125. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
126. Two

Multi-level Lists

125. One
 - 125.1. Two
 - 125.1.1. Three
 - 125.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 125.1.3. Five
 126. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccxlix. One

ccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccli. We now resume our normal programming

cclii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

127. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
128. Two

Multi-level Lists

127. One
 - 127.1. Two
 - 127.1.1. Three
 - 127.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 127.1.3. Five
 128. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccliii. One
- ccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cclv. We now resume our normal programming
- cclvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

129. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
130. Two

Multi-level Lists

129. One
- 129.1. Two

-
- 129.1.1. Three
- 129.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 129.1.3. Five
130. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

cclvii. One

cclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cclix. We now resume our normal programming

cclx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

131. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
132. Two

Multi-level Lists

131. One
 - 131.1. Two
 - 131.1.1. Three
 - 131.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 131.1.3. Five
 132. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cclxi. One
- cclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- cclxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

133. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
134. Two

Multi-level Lists

133. One
 - 133.1. Two
 - 133.1.1. Three
 - 133.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 133.1.3. Five
 134. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cclxv. One

cclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

cclxviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

135. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
136. Two

Multi-level Lists

135. One
 - 135.1. Two
 - 135.1.1. Three
 - 135.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 135.1.3. Five
 136. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cclxix. One
- cclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cclxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cclxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

137. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
138. Two

Multi-level Lists

137. One
 - 137.1. Two
 - 137.1.1. Three
 - 137.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 137.1.3. Five
138. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cclxxiii. One

cclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

cclxxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

139. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
140. Two

Multi-level Lists

139. One
 - 139.1. Two
 - 139.1.1. Three
 - 139.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 139.1.3. Five
 140. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cclxxvii. One
- cclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- cclxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

141. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
142. Two

Multi-level Lists

141. One
 - 141.1. Two
 - 141.1.1. Three
 - 141.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 141.1.3. Five
 142. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cclxxxi. One

cclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

cclxxxiv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

143. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
144. Two

Multi-level Lists

143. One
 - 143.1. Two
 - 143.1.1. Three
 - 143.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 143.1.3. Five
 144. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cclxxxv. One
- cclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cclxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

145. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
146. Two

Multi-level Lists

145. One
 - 145.1. Two
 - 145.1.1. Three
 - 145.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 145.1.3. Five
 146. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cclxxxix. One

ccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxci. We now resume our normal programming

ccxcii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

147. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
148. Two

Multi-level Lists

147. One
 - 147.1. Two
 - 147.1.1. Three
 - 147.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 147.1.3. Five
 148. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccxciii. One
- ccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccxcv. We now resume our normal programming
- ccxcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

149. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
150. Two

Multi-level Lists

149. One
 - 149.1. Two
 - 149.1.1. Three
 - 149.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 149.1.3. Five
 150. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccxcvii. One

ccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccxcix. We now resume our normal programming

ccc. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

151. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
152. Two

Multi-level Lists

151. One
 - 151.1. Two
 - 151.1.1. Three
 - 151.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 151.1.3. Five
 152. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccci. One
- cccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccciii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccciv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

153. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
154. Two

Multi-level Lists

153. One
 - 153.1. Two
 - 153.1.1. Three
 - 153.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 153.1.3. Five
 154. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccv. One

cccvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccvii. We now resume our normal programming

cccviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

155. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
156. Two

Multi-level Lists

155. One
 - 155.1. Two
 - 155.1.1. Three
 - 155.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 155.1.3. Five
 156. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccix. One
- cccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

157. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
158. Two

Multi-level Lists

157. One
 - 157.1. Two
 - 157.1.1. Three
 - 157.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 157.1.3. Five
158. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccxiii. One

cccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccxv. We now resume our normal programming

cccxvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

159. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
160. Two

Multi-level Lists

159. One
 - 159.1. Two
 - 159.1.1. Three
 - 159.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 159.1.3. Five
 160. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccxvii. One
- cccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccix. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

161. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
162. Two

Multi-level Lists

161. One
 - 161.1. Two
 - 161.1.1. Three
 - 161.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 161.1.3. Five
 162. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccxxi. One

cccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

cccxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

163. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
164. Two

Multi-level Lists

163. One
 - 163.1. Two
 - 163.1.1. Three
 - 163.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 163.1.3. Five
 164. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccxxv. One
- cccxxvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- cccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

165. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
166. Two

Multi-level Lists

165. One
 - 165.1. Two
 - 165.1.1. Three
 - 165.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 165.1.3. Five
 166. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccxxix. One

cccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

cccxxxii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

167. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
168. Two

Multi-level Lists

167. One
 - 167.1. Two
 - 167.1.1. Three
 - 167.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 167.1.3. Five
 168. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccxxxiii. One
- cccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

169. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
170. Two

Multi-level Lists

169. One
 - 169.1. Two
 - 169.1.1. Three
 - 169.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 169.1.3. Five
 170. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccxxxvii. One

cccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

cccxl. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

171. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
172. Two

Multi-level Lists

171. One
 - 171.1. Two
 - 171.1.1. Three
 - 171.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 171.1.3. Five
 172. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccxi. One
- cccxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccxl. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxli. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

173. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
174. Two

Multi-level Lists

173. One
 - 173.1. Two
 - 173.1.1. Three
 - 173.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 173.1.3. Five
 174. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccxliv. One

cccxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

cccxlvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

175. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
176. Two

Multi-level Lists

175. One
 - 175.1. Two
 - 175.1.1. Three
 - 175.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 175.1.3. Five
 176. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccxlx. One
- cccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccli. We now resume our normal programming
- ccclii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

177. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
178. Two

Multi-level Lists

177. One
 - 177.1. Two
 - 177.1.1. Three
 - 177.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 177.1.3. Five
 178. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccliii. One

cccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccclv. We now resume our normal programming

ccclvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

179. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
180. Two

Multi-level Lists

179. One
 - 179.1. Two
 - 179.1.1. Three
 - 179.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 179.1.3. Five
 180. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccclvii. One
- ccclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccclix. We now resume our normal programming
- ccclx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

181. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
182. Two

Multi-level Lists

181. One
 - 181.1. Two
 - 181.1.1. Three
 - 181.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 181.1.3. Five
 182. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccclxi. One

ccclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

ccclxiv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

183. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
184. Two

Multi-level Lists

183. One
 - 183.1. Two
 - 183.1.1. Three
 - 183.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 183.1.3. Five
 184. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccclxv. One
- ccclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccclxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccclxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

185. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
186. Two

Multi-level Lists

185. One
 - 185.1. Two
 - 185.1.1. Three
 - 185.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 185.1.3. Five
 186. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccclxix. One

ccclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

ccclxxii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

187. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
188. Two

Multi-level Lists

187. One
 - 187.1. Two
 - 187.1.1. Three
 - 187.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 187.1.3. Five
 188. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccclxxiii. One
- ccclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- ccclxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

189. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
190. Two

Multi-level Lists

189. One
 - 189.1. Two
 - 189.1.1. Three
 - 189.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 189.1.3. Five
 190. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

ccclxxvii. One

ccclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

ccclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

ccclxxx. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

191. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
192. Two

Multi-level Lists

191. One
 - 191.1. Two
 - 191.1.1. Three
 - 191.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 191.1.3. Five
 192. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccclxxxi. One
- ccclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- ccclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccclxxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

193. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
194. Two

Multi-level Lists

193. One
- 193.1. Two

-
- 193.1.1. Three
- 193.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 193.1.3. Five
194. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- ccclxxxv. One
- ccclxxxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- ccclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- ccclxxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

195. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
196. Two

Multi-level Lists

195. One
 - 195.1. Two
 - 195.1.1. Three
 - 195.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 195.1.3. Five
 196. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- ccclxxxix. One
- cccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

197. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
198. Two

Multi-level Lists

197. One
 - 197.1. Two
 - 197.1.1. Three
 - 197.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 197.1.3. Five
 198. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cccxciii. One

cccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

cccxcvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

199. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
200. Two

Multi-level Lists

199. One
 - 199.1. Two
 - 199.1.1. Three
 - 199.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 199.1.3. Five
 200. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cccxcvii. One
- cccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- cd. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

201. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
202. Two

Multi-level Lists

201. One
 - 201.1. Two
 - 201.1.1. Three
 - 201.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 201.1.3. Five
 202. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdi. One

cdii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdiii. We now resume our normal programming

cdiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

203. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
204. Two

Multi-level Lists

203. One
 - 203.1. Two
 - 203.1.1. Three
 - 203.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 203.1.3. Five
 204. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdv. One
- cdvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cdviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

205. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
206. Two

Multi-level Lists

205. One
 - 205.1. Two
 - 205.1.1. Three
 - 205.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 205.1.3. Five
 206. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdix. One

cdx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxi. We now resume our normal programming

cdxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

207. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
208. Two

Multi-level Lists

207. One
 - 207.1. Two
 - 207.1.1. Three
 - 207.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 207.1.3. Five
 208. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdxiii. One
- cdxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdxv. We now resume our normal programming
- cdxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

209. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
210. Two

Multi-level Lists

209. One
 - 209.1. Two
 - 209.1.1. Three
 - 209.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 209.1.3. Five
 210. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxvii. One

cdxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxix. We now resume our normal programming

cdxx. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

211. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
212. Two

Multi-level Lists

211. One
 - 211.1. Two
 - 211.1.1. Three
 - 211.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 211.1.3. Five
 212. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdxxi. One
- cdxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- cdxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

213. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
214. Two

Multi-level Lists

213. One
 - 213.1. Two
 - 213.1.1. Three
 - 213.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 213.1.3. Five
 214. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxxv. One

cdxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

cdxxviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

215. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
216. Two

Multi-level Lists

215. One
 - 215.1. Two
 - 215.1.1. Three
 - 215.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 215.1.3. Five
 216. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdxxix. One
- cdxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cdxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

217. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
218. Two

Multi-level Lists

217. One
 - 217.1. Two
 - 217.1.1. Three
 - 217.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 217.1.3. Five
 218. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxxxiii. One

cdxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

cdxxxvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

219. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
220. Two

Multi-level Lists

219. One
 - 219.1. Two
 - 219.1.1. Three
 - 219.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 219.1.3. Five
 220. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdxxxvii. One
- cdxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- cdxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

221. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
222. Two

Multi-level Lists

221. One
 - 221.1. Two
 - 221.1.1. Three
 - 221.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 221.1.3. Five
 222. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxli. One

cdxl.ii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxl.iii. We now resume our normal programming

cdxl.iv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

223. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
224. Two

Multi-level Lists

223. One
 - 223.1. Two
 - 223.1.1. Three
 - 223.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 223.1.3. Five
 224. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdxlv. One
- cdxlvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- cdxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cdxlviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

225. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
226. Two

Multi-level Lists

225. One
 - 225.1. Two
 - 225.1.1. Three
 - 225.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 225.1.3. Five
 226. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxlx. One

cdl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdli. We now resume our normal programming

cdlii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

227. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
228. Two

Multi-level Lists

227. One
 - 227.1. Two
 - 227.1.1. Three
 - 227.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 227.1.3. Five
 228. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdliii. One
- cdliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdlv. We now resume our normal programming
- cdlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

229. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
230. Two

Multi-level Lists

229. One
 - 229.1. Two
 - 229.1.1. Three
 - 229.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 229.1.3. Five
 230. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdlvii. One

cdlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdlix. We now resume our normal programming

cdlx. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

231. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
232. Two

Multi-level Lists

231. One
 - 231.1. Two
 - 231.1.1. Three
 - 231.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 231.1.3. Five
 232. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdlxi. One
- cdlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- cdlxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

233. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
234. Two

Multi-level Lists

233. One
 - 233.1. Two
 - 233.1.1. Three
 - 233.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 233.1.3. Five
 234. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdlxv. One

cdlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

cdlxviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

235. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
236. Two

Multi-level Lists

235. One
 - 235.1. Two
 - 235.1.1. Three
 - 235.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 235.1.3. Five
 236. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdlxix. One
- cdlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdlxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cdlxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

237. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
238. Two

Multi-level Lists

237. One
 - 237.1. Two
 - 237.1.1. Three
 - 237.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 237.1.3. Five
238. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdlxxiii. One

cdlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdlxxv. We now resume our normal programming

cdlxxvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

239. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
240. Two

Multi-level Lists

239. One
 - 239.1. Two
 - 239.1.1. Three
 - 239.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 239.1.3. Five
 240. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdlxxvii. One
- cdlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdlxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- cdlxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

241. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
242. Two

Multi-level Lists

241. One
 - 241.1. Two
 - 241.1.1. Three
 - 241.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 241.1.3. Five
 242. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdlxxxix. One

cdlxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

cdlxxxiv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

243. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
244. Two

Multi-level Lists

243. One
 - 243.1. Two
 - 243.1.1. Three
 - 243.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 243.1.3. Five
 244. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cdlxxxv. One
- cdlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cdlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cdlxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

245. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
246. Two

Multi-level Lists

245. One
 - 245.1. Two
 - 245.1.1. Three
 - 245.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 245.1.3. Five
 246. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdlxxxix. One

cdxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxci. We now resume our normal programming

cdxcii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

247. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
248. Two

Multi-level Lists

247. One
 - 247.1. Two
 - 247.1.1. Three
 - 247.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 247.1.3. Five

248. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxciii. One

cdxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxcv. We now resume our normal programming

cdxcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

249. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
250. Two

Multi-level Lists

249. One
 - 249.1. Two
 - 249.1.1. Three
 - 249.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 249.1.3. Five
 250. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cdxcvii. One

cdxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cdxcix. We now resume our normal programming

d. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

251. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
252. Two

Multi-level Lists

251. One
 - 251.1. Two
 - 251.1.1. Three
 - 251.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 251.1.3. Five
 252. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- di. One
- dii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- diii. We now resume our normal programming
- div. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

253. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
254. Two

Multi-level Lists

253. One
 - 253.1. Two
 - 253.1.1. Three
 - 253.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 253.1.3. Five
 254. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dv. One

dvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dvii. We now resume our normal programming

dviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

255. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
256. Two

Multi-level Lists

255. One
 - 255.1. Two
 - 255.1.1. Three
 - 255.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 255.1.3. Five
 256. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dix. One
- dx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dxi. We now resume our normal programming
- dxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even *i* and *m*. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Town					

Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
---------	-----	---------	---------	---------	-----	-----

						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For

example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>

<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One

-
- Two

Numbered List

- 257. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 258. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 257. One
 - 257.1. Two
 - 257.1.1. Three
 - 257.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 257.1.3. Five

- 258. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dxiii. One
- dxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dxv. We now resume our normal programming
- dxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

259. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
260. Two

Multi-level Lists

259. One
 - 259.1. Two
 - 259.1.1. Three
 - 259.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 259.1.3. Five
 260. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dxvii. One

dxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dxix. We now resume our normal programming

dx. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

261. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
262. Two

Multi-level Lists

261. One
 - 261.1. Two
 - 261.1.1. Three
 - 261.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 261.1.3. Five
 262. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dxxi. One
- dxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dxxiv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

263. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
264. Two

Multi-level Lists

263. One
 - 263.1. Two
 - 263.1.1. Three
 - 263.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 263.1.3. Five
 264. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dxxv. One

dxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dxxviii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 265. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 266. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 265. One
 - 265.1. Two
 - 265.1.1. Three
 - 265.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 265.1.3. Five
 - 266. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dxxix. One
- dxxx. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- dxxxii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	
To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.			

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

267. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
268. Two

Multi-level Lists

267. One
 - 267.1. Two
 - 267.1.1. Three
 - 267.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 267.1.3. Five
 268. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dxxxiii. One

dxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

dxxxvi. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 269. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 270. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 269. One
 - 269.1. Two
 - 269.1.1. Three
 - 269.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 269.1.3. Five
 - 270. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dxxxvii. One
- dxxxviii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- dxl. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

271. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
272. Two

Multi-level Lists

271. One
 - 271.1. Two
 - 271.1.1. Three
 - 271.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 271.1.3. Five

272. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dxli. One
- dxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dxliii. We now resume our normal programming
- dxliv. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 273. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 274. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 273. One
 - 273.1. Two
 - 273.1.1. Three
 - 273.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 273.1.3. Five
 - 274. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dxlv. One
- dxlvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- dxlviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two		To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

275. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
276. Two

Multi-level Lists

275. One
 - 275.1. Two
 - 275.1.1. Three
 - 275.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 275.1.3. Five
 276. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dxlix. One
- dl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dli. We now resume our normal programming
- dlii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 277. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 278. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 277. One
 - 277.1. Two
 - 277.1.1. Three
 - 277.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 277.1.3. Five
 - 278. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dliv. One
- dliv. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dlv. We now resume our normal programming
- dlvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

279. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
280. Two

Multi-level Lists

279. One
 - 279.1. Two
 - 279.1.1. Three
 - 279.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 279.1.3. Five
 280. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dlvii. One

dlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dl ix. We now resume our normal programming

dlx. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

281. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
282. Two

Multi-level Lists

281. One
 - 281.1. Two
 - 281.1.1. Three
 - 281.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 281.1.3. Five
 282. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dlxi. One
- dlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dlxiv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

283. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
284. Two

Multi-level Lists

283. One
 - 283.1. Two
 - 283.1.1. Three
 - 283.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 283.1.3. Five
 284. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dlxv. One

dlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dlxviii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

285. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

286. Two

Multi-level Lists

285. One

285.1. Two

285.1.1. Three

285.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

285.1.3. Five

286. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dlxix. One

dlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

dlxxii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

287. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
288. Two

Multi-level Lists

287. One
 - 287.1. Two
 - 287.1.1. Three
 - 287.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 287.1.3. Five
 288. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dlxxiii. One
- dlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dlxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- dlxxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

289. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

290. Two

Multi-level Lists

289. One

289.1. Two

289.1.1. Three

289.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

289.1.3. Five

290. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dlxxvii. One

dlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dlxxix. We now resume our normal programming

dlxxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

291. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
292. Two

Multi-level Lists

291. One
 - 291.1. Two
 - 291.1.1. Three
 - 291.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 291.1.3. Five

292. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dlxxxi. One
- dlxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dlxxxiv. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

293. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

294. Two

Multi-level Lists

293. One

293.1. Two

293.1.1. Three

293.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

293.1.3. Five

294. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dlxxxv. One

dlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dlxxxviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

295. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
296. Two

Multi-level Lists

295. One
 - 295.1. Two
 - 295.1.1. Three
 - 295.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 295.1.3. Five
 296. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dlxxxix. One
dxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dxci. We now resume our normal programming
dxcii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

297. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

298. Two

Multi-level Lists

297. One

297.1. Two

297.1.1. Three

297.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

297.1.3. Five

298. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dxci. One

dxci. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dxci. We now resume our normal programming

dxci. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

299. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
300. Two

Multi-level Lists

299. One
 - 299.1. Two
 - 299.1.1. Three
 - 299.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 299.1.3. Five
 300. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dxcvii. One

dxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dxcix. We now resume our normal programming

dc. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

301. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
302. Two

Multi-level Lists

301. One
 - 301.1. Two
 - 301.1.1. Three
 - 301.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 301.1.3. Five
 302. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dci. One
- dcii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dciii. We now resume our normal programming
- dciv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

303. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
304. Two

Multi-level Lists

303. One
 - 303.1. Two
 - 303.1.1. Three
 - 303.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 303.1.3. Five
 304. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcv. One

dcvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcvii. We now resume our normal programming

dcviii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

305. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

306. Two

Multi-level Lists

305. One

305.1. Two

305.1.1. Three

305.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

305.1.3. Five

306. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcix. One

dcx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxi. We now resume our normal programming

dcxii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

307. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
308. Two

Multi-level Lists

307. One
 - 307.1. Two
 - 307.1.1. Three
 - 307.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 307.1.3. Five
 308. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcxiii. One

dcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxv. We now resume our normal programming

dcxvi. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 309. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 310. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 309. One
 - 309.1. Two
 - 309.1.1. Three
 - 309.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 309.1.3. Five
 - 310. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcxvii. One
- dcxviii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dcxix. We now resume our normal programming
- dcxx. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

311. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
312. Two

Multi-level Lists

311. One
 - 311.1. Two
 - 311.1.1. Three
 - 311.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 311.1.3. Five

312. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcxxi. One

dcxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

dcxxiv. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

313. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

314. Two

Multi-level Lists

313. One

313.1. Two

313.1.1. Three

313.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

313.1.3. Five

314. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcxxv. One

dcxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dcxxviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

315. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
316. Two

Multi-level Lists

315. One
 - 315.1. Two
 - 315.1.1. Three
 - 315.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 315.1.3. Five

316. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcxxix. One

dcxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

dcxxxii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

317. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

318. Two

Multi-level Lists

317. One

317.1. Two

317.1.1. Three

317.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

317.1.3. Five

318. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcxxxiii. One

dcxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

dcxxxvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

319. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
320. Two

Multi-level Lists

319. One
 - 319.1. Two
 - 319.1.1. Three
 - 319.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 319.1.3. Five
 320. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcxxxvii. One

dcxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

dcxl. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Town					

Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
---------	-----	---------	---------	---------	-----	-----

						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For

example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>

<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One

-
- Two

Numbered List

- 321. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 322. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 321. One
 - 321.1. Two
 - 321.1.1. Three
 - 321.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 321.1.3. Five

- 322. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcxli. One
- dcxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcxlviii. We now resume our normal programming
- dcxlix. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

323. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
324. Two

Multi-level Lists

323. One
 - 323.1. Two
 - 323.1.1. Three
 - 323.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 323.1.3. Five
 324. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcxlv. One

dcxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

dcxlviii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

325. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

326. Two

Multi-level Lists

325. One

325.1. Two

325.1.1. Three

325.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

325.1.3. Five

326. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcxlix. One

dcl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcli. We now resume our normal programming

dclii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

327. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
328. Two

Multi-level Lists

327. One
 - 327.1. Two
 - 327.1.1. Three
 - 327.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 327.1.3. Five
 328. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcliii. One

dcliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclv. We now resume our normal programming

dclvi. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

329. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

330. Two

Multi-level Lists

329. One

329.1. Two

329.1.1. Three

329.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

329.1.3. Five

330. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dclvii. One

dclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclix. We now resume our normal programming

dclx. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

331. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
332. Two

Multi-level Lists

331. One
 - 331.1. Two
 - 331.1.1. Three
 - 331.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 331.1.3. Five

332. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dclxi. One

dclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

dclxiv. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 333. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 334. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 333. One
 - 333.1. Two
 - 333.1.1. Three
 - 333.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 333.1.3. Five
 - 334. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dclxv. One
- dclxvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dclxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- dclxviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

335. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
336. Two

Multi-level Lists

335. One
 - 335.1. Two
 - 335.1.1. Three
 - 335.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 335.1.3. Five
 336. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dclxix. One

dclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

dclxxii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 337. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 338. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 337. One
 - 337.1. Two
 - 337.1.1. Three
 - 337.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 337.1.3. Five

- 338. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dclxxiii. One

dclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

dclxxvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

339. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
340. Two

Multi-level Lists

339. One
 - 339.1. Two
 - 339.1.1. Three
 - 339.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 339.1.3. Five
 340. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dclxxvii. One
dclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
dclxxx. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

341. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
342. Two

Multi-level Lists

341. One
 - 341.1. Two
 - 341.1.1. Three
 - 341.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 341.1.3. Five

342. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dclxxxi. One
- dclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dclxxxiv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

343. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
344. Two

Multi-level Lists

343. One
 - 343.1. Two
 - 343.1.1. Three
 - 343.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 343.1.3. Five
 344. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dclxxxv. One

dclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dclxxxviii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

345. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

346. Two

Multi-level Lists

345. One

345.1. Two

345.1.1. Three

345.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

345.1.3. Five

346. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dclxxxix. One

dcxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxci. We now resume our normal programming

dcxcii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

347. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
348. Two

Multi-level Lists

347. One
 - 347.1. Two
 - 347.1.1. Three
 - 347.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 347.1.3. Five

348. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcxciii. One

dcxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxcv. We now resume our normal programming

dcxcvi. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

349. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

350. Two

Multi-level Lists

349. One

349.1. Two

349.1.1. Three

349.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

349.1.3. Five

350. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcxcvii. One

dcxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcxcix. We now resume our normal programming

dcc. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

351. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
352. Two

Multi-level Lists

351. One
 - 351.1. Two
 - 351.1.1. Three
 - 351.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 351.1.3. Five

352. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dcci. One
- dccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcciii. We now resume our normal programming
- dcciv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

353. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

354. Two

Multi-level Lists

353. One

353.1. Two

353.1.1. Three

353.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

353.1.3. Five

354. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccv. One

dccvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccvii. We now resume our normal programming

dccviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

355. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
356. Two

Multi-level Lists

355. One
 - 355.1. Two
 - 355.1.1. Three
 - 355.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 355.1.3. Five

356. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dccix. One
dccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxi. We now resume our normal programming
dccxii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

357. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

358. Two

Multi-level Lists

357. One

357.1. Two

357.1.1. Three

357.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

357.1.3. Five

358. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccxiii. One

dccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxv. We now resume our normal programming

dccxvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 1	13 1	14 1	15 1
16 1	17	18 1	19 1	20 2	21 1	22 2
23 2	24	25 2	26 2	27 2	28 2	29 2
30 3	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

359. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
360. Two

Multi-level Lists

359. One
 - 359.1. Two
 - 359.1.1. Three
 - 359.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 359.1.3. Five
 360. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dccxvii. One
dccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxix. We now resume our normal programming
dccxx. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

361. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
362. Two

Multi-level Lists

361. One
 - 361.1. Two
 - 361.1.1. Three
 - 361.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 361.1.3. Five
 362. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccxxi. One
- dccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dccxxiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

363. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
364. Two

Multi-level Lists

363. One
 - 363.1. Two
 - 363.1.1. Three
 - 363.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 363.1.3. Five
 364. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dccxxv. One

dccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dccxxviii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

365. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

366. Two

Multi-level Lists

365. One

365.1. Two

365.1.1. Three

365.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

365.1.3. Five

366. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccxxix. One

dccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

dccxxxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

367. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
368. Two

Multi-level Lists

367. One
 - 367.1. Two
 - 367.1.1. Three
 - 367.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 367.1.3. Five

368. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dccxxxiii. One
dccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
dccxxxvi. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 369. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 370. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 369. One
 - 369.1. Two
 - 369.1.1. Three
 - 369.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 369.1.3. Five
 - 370. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccxxxvii. One
- dccxxxviii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- cccxl. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 2	13 3	14 4	15 5
16 6	17	18 8	19 9	20 0	21 1	22 2
23 3	24	25 5	26 6	27 7	28 8	29 9
30 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

371. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
372. Two

Multi-level Lists

371. One
 - 371.1. Two
 - 371.1.1. Three
 - 371.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 371.1.3. Five

372. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dccxli. One

dccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxlili. We now resume our normal programming

dccxliv. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 373. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 374. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 373. One
 - 373.1. Two
 - 373.1.1. Three
 - 373.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 373.1.3. Five
 - 374. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccxliv. One
- dccxlvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- dccxlvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

375. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
376. Two

Multi-level Lists

375. One
 - 375.1. Two
 - 375.1.1. Three
 - 375.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 375.1.3. Five
 376. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dccxlix. One
dccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccli. We now resume our normal programming
dcclii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

377. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

378. Two

Multi-level Lists

377. One

377.1. Two

377.1.1. Three

377.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

377.1.3. Five

378. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccliii. One

dccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcclv. We now resume our normal programming

dcclvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

379. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
380. Two

Multi-level Lists

379. One
 - 379.1. Two
 - 379.1.1. Three
 - 379.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 379.1.3. Five
 380. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dclvii. One
dcclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcclix. We now resume our normal programming
dcclx. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 381. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 382. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 381. One
 - 381.1. Two
 - 381.1.1. Three
 - 381.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 381.1.3. Five
 - 382. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcclxi. One
- dcclxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dcclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dcclxiv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

383. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
384. Two

Multi-level Lists

383. One
 - 383.1. Two
 - 383.1.1. Three
 - 383.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 383.1.3. Five

384. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

dcclxv. One

dcclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dcclxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

385. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
386. Two

Multi-level Lists

385. One
 - 385.1. Two
 - 385.1.1. Three
 - 385.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 385.1.3. Five
 386. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcclxix. One

dcclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

dcclxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

387. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
388. Two

Multi-level Lists

387. One
 - 387.1. Two
 - 387.1.1. Three
 - 387.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 387.1.3. Five
 388. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcclxxiii. One
- dcclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- dcclxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

389. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
390. Two

Multi-level Lists

389. One
 - 389.1. Two
 - 389.1.1. Three
 - 389.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 389.1.3. Five
 390. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcclxxvii. One

dcclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

dcclxxx. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

391. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
392. Two

Multi-level Lists

391. One
 - 391.1. Two
 - 391.1.1. Three
 - 391.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 391.1.3. Five
 392. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcclxxxi. One
- dcclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dcclxxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

393. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
394. Two

Multi-level Lists

393. One
 - 393.1. Two
 - 393.1.1. Three
 - 393.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 393.1.3. Five
 394. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcclxxxv. One

dcclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dcclxxxviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

395. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
396. Two

Multi-level Lists

395. One
 - 395.1. Two
 - 395.1.1. Three
 - 395.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 395.1.3. Five
 396. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcclxxxix. One
- dccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccxci. We now resume our normal programming
- dccxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

397. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
398. Two

Multi-level Lists

397. One
 - 397.1. Two
 - 397.1.1. Three
 - 397.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 397.1.3. Five
398. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccxciii. One

dccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

dccxcvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

399. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
400. Two

Multi-level Lists

399. One
 - 399.1. Two
 - 399.1.1. Three
 - 399.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 399.1.3. Five
 400. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccxcvii. One
- dccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- dccc. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

401. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
402. Two

Multi-level Lists

401. One
 - 401.1. Two
 - 401.1.1. Three
 - 401.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 401.1.3. Five
 402. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccci. One

dcccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccciii. We now resume our normal programming

dccciv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

403. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
404. Two

Multi-level Lists

403. One
 - 403.1. Two
 - 403.1.1. Three
 - 403.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 403.1.3. Five
 404. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcccv. One
- dcccv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccvii. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

405. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
406. Two

Multi-level Lists

405. One
 - 405.1. Two
 - 405.1.1. Three
 - 405.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 405.1.3. Five
 406. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcccix. One

dcccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

dcccxii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

407. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
408. Two

Multi-level Lists

407. One
 - 407.1. Two
 - 407.1.1. Three
 - 407.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 407.1.3. Five
 408. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccciii. One
- dccciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccxv. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

409. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
410. Two

Multi-level Lists

409. One
 - 409.1. Two
 - 409.1.1. Three
 - 409.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 409.1.3. Five
 410. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcccxvii. One

dcccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcccxix. We now resume our normal programming

dcccxx. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

411. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
412. Two

Multi-level Lists

411. One
 - 411.1. Two
 - 411.1.1. Three
 - 411.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 411.1.3. Five
 412. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcccxxi. One
- dcccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

413. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
414. Two

Multi-level Lists

413. One
 - 413.1. Two
 - 413.1.1. Three
 - 413.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 413.1.3. Five
 414. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcccxxv. One

dcccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dcccxxviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

415. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
416. Two

Multi-level Lists

415. One
 - 415.1. Two
 - 415.1.1. Three
 - 415.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 415.1.3. Five
 416. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcccxxix. One
- dcccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccxxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

417. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
418. Two

Multi-level Lists

417. One
 - 417.1. Two
 - 417.1.1. Three
 - 417.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 417.1.3. Five
 418. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcccxxxiii. One

dcccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

dcccxxxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

419. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
420. Two

Multi-level Lists

419. One
 - 419.1. Two
 - 419.1.1. Three
 - 419.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 419.1.3. Five
 420. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcccxxvii. One
- dcccxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

421. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
422. Two

Multi-level Lists

421. One
 - 421.1. Two
 - 421.1.1. Three
 - 421.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 421.1.3. Five
 422. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccccli. One

dccccli. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccccli. We now resume our normal programming

dccccli. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

423. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
424. Two

Multi-level Lists

423. One
 - 423.1. Two
 - 423.1.1. Three
 - 423.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 423.1.3. Five
 424. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcccxlvi. One
- dcccxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccxlvi. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccxlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

425. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
426. Two

Multi-level Lists

425. One
 - 425.1. Two
 - 425.1.1. Three
 - 425.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 425.1.3. Five
 426. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dcccxlx. One

dccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccli. We now resume our normal programming

dccli. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

427. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
428. Two

Multi-level Lists

427. One
 - 427.1. Two
 - 427.1.1. Three
 - 427.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 427.1.3. Five
 428. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccliii. One
- ccccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cccclv. We now resume our normal programming
- cccclvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

429. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
430. Two

Multi-level Lists

429. One
 - 429.1. Two
 - 429.1.1. Three
 - 429.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 429.1.3. Five
 430. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccclvii. One

dccclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccclix. We now resume our normal programming

dcclx. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

431. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
432. Two

Multi-level Lists

431. One
 - 431.1. Two
 - 431.1.1. Three
 - 431.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 431.1.3. Five
 432. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccclxi. One
- dccclxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dccclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- dccclxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

433. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
434. Two

Multi-level Lists

433. One
 - 433.1. Two
 - 433.1.1. Three
 - 433.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 433.1.3. Five
 434. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccclxv. One

dccclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

dccclxviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

435. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
436. Two

Multi-level Lists

435. One
 - 435.1. Two
 - 435.1.1. Three
 - 435.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 435.1.3. Five
 436. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccclxix. One
- dccclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccclxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- dccclxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

437. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
438. Two

Multi-level Lists

437. One
 - 437.1. Two
 - 437.1.1. Three
 - 437.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 437.1.3. Five
438. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccclxxiii. One

dccclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

dccclxxvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

439. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
440. Two

Multi-level Lists

439. One
 - 439.1. Two
 - 439.1.1. Three
 - 439.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 439.1.3. Five
 440. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccclxxvii. One
- dccclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- dccclxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

441. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
442. Two

Multi-level Lists

441. One
 - 441.1. Two
 - 441.1.1. Three
 - 441.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 441.1.3. Five
 442. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccclxxxi. One

dccclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dccclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

dccclxxxiv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

443. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
444. Two

Multi-level Lists

443. One
 - 443.1. Two
 - 443.1.1. Three
 - 443.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 443.1.3. Five
 444. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dccclxxxv. One
- dccclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dccclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- dccclxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

445. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
446. Two

Multi-level Lists

445. One
 - 445.1. Two
 - 445.1.1. Three
 - 445.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 445.1.3. Five
 446. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

dccclxxxix. One

dcccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

dcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

dcccxcii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

447. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
448. Two

Multi-level Lists

447. One
 - 447.1. Two
 - 447.1.1. Three
 - 447.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 447.1.3. Five
 448. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- dcccxciii. One
- dcccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- dcccxcv. We now resume our normal programming
- dcccxcvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

449. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
450. Two

Multi-level Lists

449. One
 - 449.1. Two

-
- 449.1.1. Three
- 449.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 449.1.3. Five
450. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- dcccxcvii. One
- dcccxcviii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- dcccxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- cm. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

451. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
452. Two

Multi-level Lists

451. One
 - 451.1. Two
 - 451.1.1. Three
 - 451.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 451.1.3. Five
 452. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmi. One
- cmii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmiii. We now resume our normal programming
- cmiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

453. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
454. Two

Multi-level Lists

453. One
 - 453.1. Two
 - 453.1.1. Three
 - 453.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 453.1.3. Five
 454. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmv. One

cmvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmvii. We now resume our normal programming

cmviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

455. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
456. Two

Multi-level Lists

455. One
 - 455.1. Two
 - 455.1.1. Three
 - 455.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 455.1.3. Five
 456. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmix. One
- cmx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxi. We now resume our normal programming
- cmxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

457. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
458. Two

Multi-level Lists

457. One
 - 457.1. Two
 - 457.1.1. Three
 - 457.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 457.1.3. Five
458. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmxiii. One

cmxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmxv. We now resume our normal programming

cmxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

459. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
460. Two

Multi-level Lists

459. One
 - 459.1. Two
 - 459.1.1. Three
 - 459.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 459.1.3. Five
 460. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmxvii. One
- cmxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxix. We now resume our normal programming
- cmxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

461. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
462. Two

Multi-level Lists

461. One
 - 461.1. Two
 - 461.1.1. Three
 - 461.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 461.1.3. Five
462. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmxxi. One

cmxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

cmxxiv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

463. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
464. Two

Multi-level Lists

463. One
 - 463.1. Two
 - 463.1.1. Three
 - 463.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 463.1.3. Five
 464. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmxxv. One
- cmxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cmxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

465. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
466. Two

Multi-level Lists

465. One
 - 465.1. Two
 - 465.1.1. Three
 - 465.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 465.1.3. Five
 466. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmxxix. One

cmxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

cmxxxii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

467. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
468. Two

Multi-level Lists

467. One
 - 467.1. Two
 - 467.1.1. Three
 - 467.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 467.1.3. Five
 468. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmxxxiii. One
- cmxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- cmxxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

469. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
470. Two

Multi-level Lists

469. One
 - 469.1. Two
 - 469.1.1. Three
 - 469.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 469.1.3. Five
 470. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmxxxvii. One

cmxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

cmxl. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

471. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
472. Two

Multi-level Lists

471. One
 - 471.1. Two
 - 471.1.1. Three
 - 471.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 471.1.3. Five
 472. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmxli. One
- cmxliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxliv. We now resume our normal programming
- cmxlv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

473. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
474. Two

Multi-level Lists

473. One
 - 473.1. Two
 - 473.1.1. Three
 - 473.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 473.1.3. Five
 474. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmxlv. One

cmxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

cmxlviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

475. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
476. Two

Multi-level Lists

475. One
 - 475.1. Two
 - 475.1.1. Three
 - 475.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 475.1.3. Five
 476. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmxlix. One
- cml. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmli. We now resume our normal programming
- cmlii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

477. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
478. Two

Multi-level Lists

477. One
 - 477.1. Two
 - 477.1.1. Three
 - 477.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 477.1.3. Five
 478. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmliii. One

cmliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmlv. We now resume our normal programming

cmlvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

479. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
480. Two

Multi-level Lists

479. One
 - 479.1. Two
 - 479.1.1. Three
 - 479.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 479.1.3. Five

480. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmlvii. One
- cmlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmlix. We now resume our normal programming
- cmlx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

481. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
482. Two

Multi-level Lists

481. One
 - 481.1. Two
 - 481.1.1. Three
 - 481.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 481.1.3. Five
482. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmlxi. One

cmlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmlxiii. We now resume our normal programming

cmlxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

483. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
484. Two

Multi-level Lists

483. One
 - 483.1. Two
 - 483.1.1. Three
 - 483.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 483.1.3. Five
 484. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmlxv. One
- cmlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmlxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- cmlxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

485. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
486. Two

Multi-level Lists

485. One
 - 485.1. Two
 - 485.1.1. Three
 - 485.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 485.1.3. Five
 486. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmlxix. One

cmlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

cmlxxii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

487. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
488. Two

Multi-level Lists

487. One
 - 487.1. Two
 - 487.1.1. Three
 - 487.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 487.1.3. Five
 488. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmlxxiii. One
- cmlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmlxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- cmlxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

489. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
490. Two

Multi-level Lists

489. One
 - 489.1. Two
 - 489.1.1. Three
 - 489.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 489.1.3. Five
490. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmlxxvii. One

cmlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmlxxix. We now resume our normal programming

cmlxxx. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

491. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
492. Two

Multi-level Lists

491. One
 - 491.1. Two
 - 491.1.1. Three
 - 491.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 491.1.3. Five
 492. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmlxxxix. One
- cmlxxxix. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmlxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- cmlxxxix. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

493. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
494. Two

Multi-level Lists

493. One
 - 493.1. Two
 - 493.1.1. Three
 - 493.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 493.1.3. Five
 494. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmlxxxv. One

cmlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

cmlxxxviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

495. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
496. Two

Multi-level Lists

495. One
 - 495.1. Two
 - 495.1.1. Three
 - 495.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 495.1.3. Five
 496. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmlxxxix. One
- cmxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxci. We now resume our normal programming
- cmxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

497. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
498. Two

Multi-level Lists

497. One
 - 497.1. Two
 - 497.1.1. Three
 - 497.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 497.1.3. Five
498. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

cmxciii. One

cmxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

cmxcv. We now resume our normal programming

cmxcvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

499. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
500. Two

Multi-level Lists

499. One
 - 499.1. Two
 - 499.1.1. Three
 - 499.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 499.1.3. Five
 500. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- cmxcvii. One
- cmxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- cmxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- m. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

501. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
502. Two

Multi-level Lists

501. One
 - 501.1. Two
 - 501.1.1. Three
 - 501.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 501.1.3. Five
 502. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mi. One

mii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

miii. We now resume our normal programming

miv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

503. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
504. Two

Multi-level Lists

503. One
 - 503.1. Two
 - 503.1.1. Three
 - 503.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 503.1.3. Five
 504. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mv. One
- mvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

505. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
506. Two

Multi-level Lists

505. One
 - 505.1. Two
 - 505.1.1. Three
 - 505.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 505.1.3. Five
 506. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mix. One

mx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mxi. We now resume our normal programming

mxii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

507. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
508. Two

Multi-level Lists

507. One
 - 507.1. Two
 - 507.1.1. Three
 - 507.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 507.1.3. Five
 508. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mxiii. One
- mxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

509. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
510. Two

Multi-level Lists

509. One
 - 509.1. Two
 - 509.1.1. Three
 - 509.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 509.1.3. Five
 510. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mxvii. One

mxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mxix. We now resume our normal programming

mxx. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

511. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
512. Two

Multi-level Lists

511. One
 - 511.1. Two
 - 511.1.1. Three
 - 511.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 511.1.3. Five
 512. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mxxi. One
- mxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

513. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
514. Two

Multi-level Lists

513. One
- 513.1. Two

-
- 513.1.1. Three
- 513.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 513.1.3. Five
514. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mxxv. One
- mxxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

515. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
516. Two

Multi-level Lists

515. One
 - 515.1. Two
 - 515.1.1. Three
 - 515.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 515.1.3. Five
 516. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mxxix. One
- mxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

517. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
518. Two

Multi-level Lists

517. One
 - 517.1. Two
 - 517.1.1. Three
 - 517.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 517.1.3. Five
518. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mxxxiii. One

mxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mxxxvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

519. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
520. Two

Multi-level Lists

519. One
 - 519.1. Two
 - 519.1.1. Three
 - 519.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 519.1.3. Five
 520. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mxxxvii. One
- mxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

521. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
522. Two

Multi-level Lists

521. One
 - 521.1. Two
 - 521.1.1. Three
 - 521.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 521.1.3. Five
 522. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mxli. One

mxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mxliii. We now resume our normal programming

mxliv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

523. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
524. Two

Multi-level Lists

523. One
 - 523.1. Two
 - 523.1.1. Three
 - 523.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 523.1.3. Five
 524. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mxlv. One
- mxlvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mxlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

525. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
526. Two

Multi-level Lists

525. One
 - 525.1. Two
 - 525.1.1. Three
 - 525.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 525.1.3. Five
 526. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mxlix. One

ml. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mli. We now resume our normal programming

mlii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

527. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
528. Two

Multi-level Lists

527. One
 - 527.1. Two
 - 527.1.1. Three
 - 527.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 527.1.3. Five
 528. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mliii. One
- mliv. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mlv. We now resume our normal programming
- mlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

529. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
530. Two

Multi-level Lists

529. One
 - 529.1. Two
 - 529.1.1. Three
 - 529.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 529.1.3. Five
 530. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mlvii. One

mlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mlix. We now resume our normal programming

mlx. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

531. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
532. Two

Multi-level Lists

531. One
 - 531.1. Two
 - 531.1.1. Three
 - 531.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 531.1.3. Five
 532. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mlxi. One
- mlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mlxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

533. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
534. Two

Multi-level Lists

533. One
 - 533.1. Two
 - 533.1.1. Three
 - 533.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 533.1.3. Five
 534. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mlxv. One

mlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mlxviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

535. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
536. Two

Multi-level Lists

535. One
 - 535.1. Two
 - 535.1.1. Three
 - 535.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 535.1.3. Five
 536. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mlxix. One
- mlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mlxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mlxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

537. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
538. Two

Multi-level Lists

537. One
 - 537.1. Two
 - 537.1.1. Three
 - 537.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 537.1.3. Five
538. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mlxxiii. One

mlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mlxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mlxxvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

539. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
540. Two

Multi-level Lists

539. One
- 539.1. Two
- 539.1.1. Three
- 539.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 539.1.3. Five
540. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mlxxvii. One
- mlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mlxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mlxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

541. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
542. Two

Multi-level Lists

541. One
 - 541.1. Two
 - 541.1.1. Three
 - 541.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 541.1.3. Five
 542. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mlxxxi. One

mlxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mlxxxiv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

543. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
544. Two

Multi-level Lists

543. One
 - 543.1. Two
 - 543.1.1. Three
 - 543.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 543.1.3. Five
 544. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mlxxxv. One
- mlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mlxxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

545. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
546. Two

Multi-level Lists

545. One
 - 545.1. Two
 - 545.1.1. Three
 - 545.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 545.1.3. Five
 546. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mlxxxix. One

mx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mxci. We now resume our normal programming

mxcii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

547. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
548. Two

Multi-level Lists

547. One
 - 547.1. Two
 - 547.1.1. Three
 - 547.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 547.1.3. Five
 548. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mxci. One
- mxcii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mxci. We now resume our normal programming
- mxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

549. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
550. Two

Multi-level Lists

549. One
 - 549.1. Two
 - 549.1.1. Three
 - 549.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 549.1.3. Five
 550. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mxcvii. One

mxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mc. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

551. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
552. Two

Multi-level Lists

551. One
 - 551.1. Two
 - 551.1.1. Three
 - 551.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 551.1.3. Five
 552. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mci. One
- mci. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mciii. We now resume our normal programming
- mciv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

553. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
554. Two

Multi-level Lists

553. One
 - 553.1. Two
 - 553.1.1. Three
 - 553.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 553.1.3. Five
 554. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcv. One

mcvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcvii. We now resume our normal programming

mcviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

555. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
556. Two

Multi-level Lists

555. One
- 555.1. Two
- 555.1.1. Three
- 555.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 555.1.3. Five
556. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcix. One
- mcx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mcxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

557. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
558. Two

Multi-level Lists

557. One
 - 557.1. Two
 - 557.1.1. Three
 - 557.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 557.1.3. Five
558. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcxiii. One

mcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcxv. We now resume our normal programming

mcxvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

559. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
560. Two

Multi-level Lists

559. One
- 559.1. Two
- 559.1.1. Three
- 559.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 559.1.3. Five
560. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcxvii. One
- mcxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

561. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
562. Two

Multi-level Lists

561. One
 - 561.1. Two
 - 561.1.1. Three
 - 561.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 561.1.3. Five
562. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcxxi. One

mcxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mcxxiv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

563. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
564. Two

Multi-level Lists

563. One
 - 563.1. Two
 - 563.1.1. Three
 - 563.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 563.1.3. Five
 564. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcxxv. One
- mcxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

565. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
566. Two

Multi-level Lists

565. One
 - 565.1. Two
 - 565.1.1. Three
 - 565.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 565.1.3. Five
 566. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcxxix. One

mcxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mcxxxii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

567. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
568. Two

Multi-level Lists

567. One
 - 567.1. Two
 - 567.1.1. Three
 - 567.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 567.1.3. Five
 568. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcxxxiii. One
- mcxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcxxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

569. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
570. Two

Multi-level Lists

569. One
 - 569.1. Two
 - 569.1.1. Three
 - 569.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 569.1.3. Five
 570. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcxxxvii. One

mcxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mcxli. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

571. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
572. Two

Multi-level Lists

571. One
 - 571.1. Two
 - 571.1.1. Three
 - 571.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 571.1.3. Five
 572. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcxli. One
- mcxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxlili. We now resume our normal programming
- mcxliv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

573. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
574. Two

Multi-level Lists

573. One
 - 573.1. Two
 - 573.1.1. Three
 - 573.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 573.1.3. Five
 574. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcxlv. One

mcxlv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mcxlviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

575. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
576. Two

Multi-level Lists

575. One
 - 575.1. Two
 - 575.1.1. Three
 - 575.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 575.1.3. Five
 576. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcxlix. One
- mcl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcli. We now resume our normal programming
- mclii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

577. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
578. Two

Multi-level Lists

577. One
- 577.1. Two

-
- 577.1.1. Three
- 577.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 577.1.3. Five
578. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcliii. One

mcliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mclv. We now resume our normal programming

mclvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

579. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
580. Two

Multi-level Lists

579. One
 - 579.1. Two
 - 579.1.1. Three
 - 579.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 579.1.3. Five
 580. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mclvii. One
- mclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mclix. We now resume our normal programming
- mclx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

581. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
582. Two

Multi-level Lists

581. One
 - 581.1. Two
 - 581.1.1. Three
 - 581.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 581.1.3. Five
 582. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mclxi. One

mclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mclxiv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

583. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
584. Two

Multi-level Lists

583. One
 - 583.1. Two
 - 583.1.1. Three
 - 583.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 583.1.3. Five
 584. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mclxv. One
- mclxvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mclxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mclxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

585. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
586. Two

Multi-level Lists

585. One
 - 585.1. Two
 - 585.1.1. Three
 - 585.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 585.1.3. Five
 586. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mclxix. One

mclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mclxxii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

587. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
588. Two

Multi-level Lists

587. One
- 587.1. Two
- 587.1.1. Three
- 587.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 587.1.3. Five
588. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mclxxiii. One
- mclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mclxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

589. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
590. Two

Multi-level Lists

589. One
 - 589.1. Two
 - 589.1.1. Three
 - 589.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 589.1.3. Five
590. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mclxxvii. One

mclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mclxxx. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

591. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
592. Two

Multi-level Lists

591. One
 - 591.1. Two
 - 591.1.1. Three
 - 591.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 591.1.3. Five
 592. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mclxxxi. One
- mclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mclxxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

593. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
594. Two

Multi-level Lists

593. One
 - 593.1. Two
 - 593.1.1. Three
 - 593.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 593.1.3. Five
594. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mclxxxv. One

mclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mclxxxviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

595. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
596. Two

Multi-level Lists

595. One
 - 595.1. Two
 - 595.1.1. Three
 - 595.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 595.1.3. Five
 596. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mclxxxix. One
- mcxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxci. We now resume our normal programming
- mcxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

597. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
598. Two

Multi-level Lists

597. One
 - 597.1. Two
 - 597.1.1. Three
 - 597.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 597.1.3. Five
598. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcxciii. One

mcxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mcxcvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

599. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
600. Two

Multi-level Lists

599. One
 - 599.1. Two
 - 599.1.1. Three
 - 599.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 599.1.3. Five
 600. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcxcvii. One
- mcxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcc. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

601. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
602. Two

Multi-level Lists

601. One
 - 601.1. Two
 - 601.1.1. Three
 - 601.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 601.1.3. Five
 602. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcci. One

mccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcciii. We now resume our normal programming

mcciv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

603. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
604. Two

Multi-level Lists

603. One
 - 603.1. Two
 - 603.1.1. Three
 - 603.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 603.1.3. Five
 604. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccv. One
- mccvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mccviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

605. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
606. Two

Multi-level Lists

605. One
 - 605.1. Two
 - 605.1.1. Three
 - 605.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 605.1.3. Five
 606. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccix. One

mccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mccxii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

607. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
608. Two

Multi-level Lists

607. One
 - 607.1. Two
 - 607.1.1. Three
 - 607.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 607.1.3. Five
 608. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccxiii. One
- mccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mccxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

609. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
610. Two

Multi-level Lists

609. One
 - 609.1. Two
 - 609.1.1. Three
 - 609.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 609.1.3. Five
 610. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccxvii. One

mccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxix. We now resume our normal programming

mccxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

611. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
612. Two

Multi-level Lists

611. One
 - 611.1. Two
 - 611.1.1. Three
 - 611.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 611.1.3. Five
 612. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccxxi. One
- mccxxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mccxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

613. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
614. Two

Multi-level Lists

613. One
 - 613.1. Two
 - 613.1.1. Three
 - 613.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 613.1.3. Five
 614. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccxxv. One

mccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mccxxviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

615. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
616. Two

Multi-level Lists

615. One
 - 615.1. Two
 - 615.1.1. Three
 - 615.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 615.1.3. Five
 616. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccxxix. One
- mccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mccxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

617. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
618. Two

Multi-level Lists

617. One
 - 617.1. Two
 - 617.1.1. Three
 - 617.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 617.1.3. Five
 618. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccxxxiii. One

mccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mccxxxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

619. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
620. Two

Multi-level Lists

619. One
 - 619.1. Two
 - 619.1.1. Three
 - 619.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 619.1.3. Five
 620. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccxxxvii. One
- mccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mccxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

621. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
622. Two

Multi-level Lists

621. One
 - 621.1. Two
 - 621.1.1. Three
 - 621.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 621.1.3. Five
 622. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccxli. One

mccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mccxliv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

623. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
624. Two

Multi-level Lists

623. One
 - 623.1. Two
 - 623.1.1. Three
 - 623.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 623.1.3. Five
 624. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccxlv. One
- mccxlv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mccxlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

625. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
626. Two

Multi-level Lists

625. One
 - 625.1. Two
 - 625.1.1. Three
 - 625.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 625.1.3. Five
 626. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccxlix. One

mccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccli. We now resume our normal programming

mcclii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

627. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
628. Two

Multi-level Lists

627. One
 - 627.1. Two
 - 627.1.1. Three
 - 627.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 627.1.3. Five
 628. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccliii. One
- mccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcclv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcclvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

629. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
630. Two

Multi-level Lists

629. One
 - 629.1. Two
 - 629.1.1. Three
 - 629.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 629.1.3. Five
 630. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcclvii. One

mcclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcclix. We now resume our normal programming

mcclx. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

631. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
632. Two

Multi-level Lists

631. One
 - 631.1. Two
 - 631.1.1. Three
 - 631.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 631.1.3. Five
 632. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcclxi. One
- mcclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcclxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

633. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
634. Two

Multi-level Lists

633. One
 - 633.1. Two
 - 633.1.1. Three
 - 633.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 633.1.3. Five
 634. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcclxv. One

mcclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mcclxviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

635. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
636. Two

Multi-level Lists

635. One
 - 635.1. Two
 - 635.1.1. Three
 - 635.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 635.1.3. Five
 636. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcclxix. One
- mcclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcclxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mcclxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

637. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
638. Two

Multi-level Lists

637. One
 - 637.1. Two
 - 637.1.1. Three
 - 637.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 637.1.3. Five
638. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcclxxiii. One

mcclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mcclxxvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats ” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

639. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
640. Two

Multi-level Lists

639. One
 - 639.1. Two
 - 639.1.1. Three
 - 639.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 639.1.3. Five
 640. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mclxxvii. One
- mclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mclxxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Town					

Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
---------	-----	---------	---------	---------	-----	-----

						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For

example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>

<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One

-
- Two

Numbered List

- 641. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 642. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 641. One
 - 641.1. Two
 - 641.1.1. Three
 - 641.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 641.1.3. Five

- 642. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcclxxxi. One
- mcclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcclxxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

643. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
644. Two

Multi-level Lists

643. One
 - 643.1. Two
 - 643.1.1. Three
 - 643.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 643.1.3. Five
 644. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcclxxxv. One
mcclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
mcclxxxviii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

645. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

646. Two

Multi-level Lists

645. One

645.1. Two

645.1.1. Three

645.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

645.1.3. Five

646. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcclxxxix. One

mccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxci. We now resume our normal programming

mccxcii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

647. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
648. Two

Multi-level Lists

647. One
 - 647.1. Two
 - 647.1.1. Three
 - 647.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 647.1.3. Five

648. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mccxciii. One

mccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mccxcvi. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 649. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 650. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 649. One
 - 649.1. Two
 - 649.1.1. Three
 - 649.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 649.1.3. Five

- 650. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccxcvii. One
- mccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- mccc. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

651. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
652. Two

Multi-level Lists

651. One
 - 651.1. Two
 - 651.1.1. Three
 - 651.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 651.1.3. Five

652. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mccci. One

mcccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccciii. We now resume our normal programming

mccciv. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 653. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 654. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 653. One
 - 653.1. Two
 - 653.1.1. Three
 - 653.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 653.1.3. Five
 - 654. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcccv. One
- mccvvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcccvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcccviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

655. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
656. Two

Multi-level Lists

655. One
 - 655.1. Two
 - 655.1.1. Three
 - 655.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 655.1.3. Five
 656. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcccix. One

mcccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mcccxii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

657. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

658. Two

Multi-level Lists

657. One

657.1. Two

657.1.1. Three

657.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

657.1.3. Five

658. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccciii. One

mccciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxv. We now resume our normal programming

mcccxvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

659. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
660. Two

Multi-level Lists

659. One
 - 659.1. Two
 - 659.1.1. Three
 - 659.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 659.1.3. Five
 660. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcccxvii. One
mcccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxix. We now resume our normal programming
mcccxx. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 661. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 662. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 661. One
 - 661.1. Two
 - 661.1.1. Three
 - 661.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 661.1.3. Five

- 662. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcccxxi. One
- mcccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcccxxiv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

663. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
664. Two

Multi-level Lists

663. One
 - 663.1. Two
 - 663.1.1. Three
 - 663.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 663.1.3. Five
 664. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcccxxv. One
mcccxxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
mcccxxviii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 665. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 666. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 665. One
 - 665.1. Two
 - 665.1.1. Three
 - 665.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 665.1.3. Five

- 666. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcccxxix. One

mcccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mcccxxxii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

667. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
668. Two

Multi-level Lists

667. One
 - 667.1. Two
 - 667.1.1. Three
 - 667.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 667.1.3. Five

668. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcccxxxiii. One
mcccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
mcccxxxvi. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 669. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 670. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 669. One
 - 669.1. Two
 - 669.1.1. Three
 - 669.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 669.1.3. Five

- 670. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcccxxxvii. One
- mcccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcccxl. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

671. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
672. Two

Multi-level Lists

671. One
 - 671.1. Two
 - 671.1.1. Three
 - 671.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 671.1.3. Five

672. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcccxli. One
mcccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxlili. We now resume our normal programming
mcccxliv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 673. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 674. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 673. One
 - 673.1. Two
 - 673.1.1. Three
 - 673.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 673.1.3. Five
 - 674. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcccxlvi. One
- mcccxlvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcccxlvi. We now resume our normal programming
- mcccxlvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

675. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
676. Two

Multi-level Lists

675. One
 - 675.1. Two
 - 675.1.1. Three
 - 675.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 675.1.3. Five
 676. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcccxlx. One
mcccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccli. We now resume our normal programming
mcccli. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 677. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 678. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 677. One
 - 677.1. Two
 - 677.1.1. Three
 - 677.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 677.1.3. Five
 - 678. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcccliii. One
- mcccliv. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcclv. We now resume our normal programming
- mccclvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

679. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
680. Two

Multi-level Lists

679. One
 - 679.1. Two
 - 679.1.1. Three
 - 679.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 679.1.3. Five
 680. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcclvii. One
mcclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcclix. We now resume our normal programming
mcclx. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 681. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 682. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 681. One
 - 681.1. Two
 - 681.1.1. Three
 - 681.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 681.1.3. Five
 - 682. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccclxi. One
- mccclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mccclxiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

683. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
684. Two

Multi-level Lists

683. One
 - 683.1. Two
 - 683.1.1. Three
 - 683.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 683.1.3. Five
 684. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mccclxv. One

mccclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mccclxviii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

685. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

686. Two

Multi-level Lists

685. One

685.1. Two

685.1.1. Three

685.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

685.1.3. Five

686. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mccclxix. One

mccclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mccclxxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

687. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
688. Two

Multi-level Lists

687. One
 - 687.1. Two
 - 687.1.1. Three
 - 687.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 687.1.3. Five
 688. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mccclxxiii. One
mccclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
mccclxxvi. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 689. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 690. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 689. One
 - 689.1. Two
 - 689.1.1. Three
 - 689.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 689.1.3. Five

- 690. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccclxxvii. One
- mccclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mccclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mccclxxx. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

691. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
692. Two

Multi-level Lists

691. One
 - 691.1. Two
 - 691.1.1. Three
 - 691.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 691.1.3. Five

692. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mccclxxxi. One
mccclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mccclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
mccclxxxiv. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 693. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 694. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 693. One
 - 693.1. Two
 - 693.1.1. Three
 - 693.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 693.1.3. Five
 - 694. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mccclxxxv. One
- mccclxxxvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mccclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mccclxxxviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleter List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

695. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
696. Two

Multi-level Lists

695. One
 - 695.1. Two
 - 695.1.1. Three
 - 695.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 695.1.3. Five
 696. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mccclxxxix. One
mcccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxc. We now resume our normal programming

mcccxcii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 697. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 698. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 697. One
 - 697.1. Two
 - 697.1.1. Three
 - 697.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 697.1.3. Five

- 698. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcccxciii. One

mcccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mcccxcvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

699. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
700. Two

Multi-level Lists

699. One
 - 699.1. Two
 - 699.1.1. Three
 - 699.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 699.1.3. Five
 700. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcccxcvii. One
mcccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcccxcix. We now resume our normal programming
mcd. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

701. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

702. Two

Multi-level Lists

701. One

701.1. Two

701.1.1. Three

701.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

701.1.3. Five

702. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcdi. One

mcdiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdiv. We now resume our normal programming

mcdiv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

703. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
704. Two

Multi-level Lists

703. One
 - 703.1. Two
 - 703.1.1. Three
 - 703.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 703.1.3. Five
 704. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdv. One

mcdvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdvii. We now resume our normal programming

mcdviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Town					

Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
---------	-----	---------	---------	---------	-----	-----

						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For

example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>

<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One

-
- Two

Numbered List

- 705. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 706. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 705. One
 - 705.1. Two
 - 705.1.1. Three
 - 705.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 705.1.3. Five
 - 706. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdix. One
- mcdx. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcdxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mcdxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

707. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
708. Two

Multi-level Lists

707. One
 - 707.1. Two
 - 707.1.1. Three
 - 707.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 707.1.3. Five
 708. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdxiii. One
mcdxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxv. We now resume our normal programming
mcdxvi. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 709. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 710. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 709. One
 - 709.1. Two
 - 709.1.1. Three
 - 709.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 709.1.3. Five
 - 710. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdxvii. One
- mcdxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcdxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcdxx. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	
To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.			

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

711. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
712. Two

Multi-level Lists

711. One
 - 711.1. Two
 - 711.1.1. Three
 - 711.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 711.1.3. Five

712. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdxxi. One

mcdxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mcdxxiv. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

713. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

714. Two

Multi-level Lists

713. One

713.1. Two

713.1.1. Three

713.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

713.1.3. Five

714. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcdxxv. One

mcdxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mcdxxviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

715. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
716. Two

Multi-level Lists

715. One
 - 715.1. Two
 - 715.1.1. Three
 - 715.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 715.1.3. Five

716. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdxxix. One
mcdxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
mcdxxxii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

717. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
718. Two

Multi-level Lists

717. One
- 717.1. Two
- 717.1.1. Three
- 717.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 717.1.3. Five
718. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdxxxiii. One
- mcdxxxiv. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcdxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcdxxxvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

719. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
720. Two

Multi-level Lists

719. One
 - 719.1. Two
 - 719.1.1. Three
 - 719.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 719.1.3. Five
 720. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdxxxvii. One
mcdxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
mcdxl. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

721. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

722. Two

Multi-level Lists

721. One

721.1. Two

721.1.1. Three

721.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

721.1.3. Five

722. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcdxli. One

mcdxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mcdxliv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

723. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
724. Two

Multi-level Lists

723. One
 - 723.1. Two
 - 723.1.1. Three
 - 723.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 723.1.3. Five

724. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdxlv. One

mcdxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mcdxlvi. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

725. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

726. Two

Multi-level Lists

725. One

725.1. Two

725.1.1. Three

725.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

725.1.3. Five

726. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcdxlix. One

mcdl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdli. We now resume our normal programming

mcdlii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

727. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
728. Two

Multi-level Lists

727. One
 - 727.1. Two
 - 727.1.1. Three
 - 727.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 727.1.3. Five
 728. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdliii. One

mcdliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlv. We now resume our normal programming

mcdlvi. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

729. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

730. Two

Multi-level Lists

729. One

729.1. Two

729.1.1. Three

729.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

729.1.3. Five

730. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcdlvii. One

mcdlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlix. We now resume our normal programming

mcdlx. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

731. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
732. Two

Multi-level Lists

731. One
 - 731.1. Two
 - 731.1.1. Three
 - 731.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 731.1.3. Five

732. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdlxi. One

mcdlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mcdlxiv. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

733. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
734. Two

Multi-level Lists

733. One
- 733.1. Two
- 733.1.1. Three
- 733.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 733.1.3. Five
734. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdlxv. One
- mcdlxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcdlxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcdlxviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two		To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

735. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
736. Two

Multi-level Lists

735. One
 - 735.1. Two
 - 735.1.1. Three
 - 735.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 735.1.3. Five
 736. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdlxix. One
mcdlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlxxi. We now resume our normal programming
mcdlxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

737. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

738. Two

Multi-level Lists

737. One

737.1. Two

737.1.1. Three

737.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

737.1.3. Five

738. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcdlxxiii. One

mcdlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mcdlxxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

739. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
740. Two

Multi-level Lists

739. One
 - 739.1. Two
 - 739.1.1. Three
 - 739.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 739.1.3. Five
 740. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdlxxvii. One
mcdlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlxxix. We now resume our normal programming
mcdlxxx. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 741. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 742. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 741. One
 - 741.1. Two
 - 741.1.1. Three
 - 741.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 741.1.3. Five
 - 742. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdlxxxi. One
- mcdlxxxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcdlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcdlxxxiv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

743. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
744. Two

Multi-level Lists

743. One
 - 743.1. Two
 - 743.1.1. Three
 - 743.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 743.1.3. Five

744. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdlxxxv. One
mcdlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
mcdlxxxviii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 745. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 746. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 745. One
 - 745.1. Two
 - 745.1.1. Three
 - 745.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 745.1.3. Five
- 746. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdlxxxix. One
- mcdxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcdxci. We now resume our normal programming
- mcdxcii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

747. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
748. Two

Multi-level Lists

747. One
 - 747.1. Two
 - 747.1.1. Three
 - 747.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 747.1.3. Five

748. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcdxciii. One
mcdxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcdxcv. We now resume our normal programming
mcdxcvi. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 749. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 750. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 749. One
 - 749.1. Two
 - 749.1.1. Three
 - 749.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 749.1.3. Five

- 750. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcdxcvii. One
- mcdxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcdxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- md. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

751. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
752. Two

Multi-level Lists

751. One
 - 751.1. Two
 - 751.1.1. Three
 - 751.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 751.1.3. Five

752. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdi. One
- mdii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdiv. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 753. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 754. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 753. One
 - 753.1. Two
 - 753.1.1. Three
 - 753.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 753.1.3. Five

- 754. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdv. One

mdvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

755. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
756. Two

Multi-level Lists

755. One
 - 755.1. Two
 - 755.1.1. Three
 - 755.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 755.1.3. Five
 756. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdix. One
- mdx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mdxii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

757. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

758. Two

Multi-level Lists

757. One

757.1. Two

757.1.1. Three

757.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

757.1.3. Five

758. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdxiii. One

mdxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdxvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

759. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
760. Two

Multi-level Lists

759. One
 - 759.1. Two
 - 759.1.1. Three
 - 759.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 759.1.3. Five
 760. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdxvii. One
- mdxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdxx. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

761. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

762. Two

Multi-level Lists

761. One

761.1. Two

761.1.1. Three

761.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

761.1.3. Five

762. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdxxi. One

mdxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mdxxiv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

763. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
764. Two

Multi-level Lists

763. One
 - 763.1. Two
 - 763.1.1. Three
 - 763.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 763.1.3. Five

764. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdxxv. One

mdxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdxxviii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

765. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

766. Two

Multi-level Lists

765. One

765.1. Two

765.1.1. Three

765.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

765.1.3. Five

766. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdxxix. One

mdxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdxxxii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

767. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
768. Two

Multi-level Lists

767. One
 - 767.1. Two
 - 767.1.1. Three
 - 767.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 767.1.3. Five
 768. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdxxxiii. One
mdxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
mdxxxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even *i* and *m*. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Town					

Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
---------	-----	---------	---------	---------	-----	-----

						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For

example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>

<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One

-
- Two

Numbered List

769. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
770. Two

Multi-level Lists

769. One
- 769.1. Two
- 769.1.1. Three
- 769.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 769.1.3. Five
770. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdxxxvii. One
- mdxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdxl. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

771. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
772. Two

Multi-level Lists

771. One
 - 771.1. Two
 - 771.1.1. Three
 - 771.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 771.1.3. Five

772. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdxli. One

mdxl.ii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxl.iii. We now resume our normal programming

mdxl.iv. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

773. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

774. Two

Multi-level Lists

773. One

773.1. Two

773.1.1. Three

773.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

773.1.3. Five

774. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdxlv. One

mdxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdxlviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

775. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
776. Two

Multi-level Lists

775. One
 - 775.1. Two
 - 775.1.1. Three
 - 775.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 775.1.3. Five
 776. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdxlix. One
mdl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdli. We now resume our normal programming
mdl.ii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

777. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
778. Two

Multi-level Lists

777. One
- 777.1. Two
- 777.1.1. Three
- 777.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 777.1.3. Five
778. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdl.iii. One
- mdliv. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdlv. We now resume our normal programming
- mdlvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

779. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
780. Two

Multi-level Lists

779. One
 - 779.1. Two
 - 779.1.1. Three
 - 779.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 779.1.3. Five
 780. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdlvii. One
- mdlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdlix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdlx. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 781. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 782. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 781. One
 - 781.1. Two
 - 781.1.1. Three
 - 781.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 781.1.3. Five
 - 782. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdlxi. One
- mdlxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdlxiv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

783. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
784. Two

Multi-level Lists

783. One
 - 783.1. Two
 - 783.1.1. Three
 - 783.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 783.1.3. Five
 784. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdlxv. One
mdlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdlxvii. We now resume our normal programming
mdlxviii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

785. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

786. Two

Multi-level Lists

785. One

785.1. Two

785.1.1. Three

785.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

785.1.3. Five

786. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdlxix. One

mdlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdlxxii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bullethead List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

787. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
788. Two

Multi-level Lists

787. One
 - 787.1. Two
 - 787.1.1. Three
 - 787.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 787.1.3. Five
 788. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdlxxiii. One

mdlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdlxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdlxxvi. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

789. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

790. Two

Multi-level Lists

789. One

789.1. Two

789.1.1. Three

789.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

789.1.3. Five

790. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdlxxvii. One

mdlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdlxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mdlxxx. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

791. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
792. Two

Multi-level Lists

791. One
 - 791.1. Two
 - 791.1.1. Three
 - 791.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 791.1.3. Five

792. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdlxxxi. One
mdlxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
mdlxxxiv. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 793. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 794. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 793. One
 - 793.1. Two
 - 793.1.1. Three
 - 793.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 793.1.3. Five
 - 794. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdlxxxv. One
- mdlxxxvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdlxxxviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

795. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
796. Two

Multi-level Lists

795. One
 - 795.1. Two
 - 795.1.1. Three
 - 795.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 795.1.3. Five
 796. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdlxxxix. One
mdxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxci. We now resume our normal programming
mdxcii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

797. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
798. Two

Multi-level Lists

797. One
- 797.1. Two
- 797.1.1. Three
- 797.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 797.1.3. Five
798. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdxciii. One
- mdxciv. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdxcv. We now resume our normal programming
- mdxcvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

799. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
800. Two

Multi-level Lists

799. One
 - 799.1. Two
 - 799.1.1. Three
 - 799.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 799.1.3. Five
 800. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdxcvii. One
mdxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxcix. We now resume our normal programming
mdc. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

801. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

802. Two

Multi-level Lists

801. One

801.1. Two

801.1.1. Three

801.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

801.1.3. Five

802. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdci. One

mdcii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdciii. We now resume our normal programming

mdciv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

803. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
804. Two

Multi-level Lists

803. One
 - 803.1. Two
 - 803.1.1. Three
 - 803.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 803.1.3. Five
 804. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcv. One

mdcvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdcviii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

805. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

806. Two

Multi-level Lists

805. One

805.1. Two

805.1.1. Three

805.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

805.1.3. Five

806. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcix. One

mdcx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcx. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

807. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
808. Two

Multi-level Lists

807. One
 - 807.1. Two
 - 807.1.1. Three
 - 807.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 807.1.3. Five
 808. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcxiii. One

mdcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxvi. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

809. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
810. Two

Multi-level Lists

809. One
- 809.1. Two
- 809.1.1. Three
- 809.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 809.1.3. Five

810. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcxvii. One

mdcxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxix. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxx. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleter List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

811. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
812. Two

Multi-level Lists

811. One
 - 811.1. Two
 - 811.1.1. Three
 - 811.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 811.1.3. Five

812. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcxxi. One

mdcxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxxiv. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

813. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

814. Two

Multi-level Lists

813. One

813.1. Two

813.1.1. Three

813.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

813.1.3. Five

814. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcxxv. One

mdcxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxxviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

815. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
816. Two

Multi-level Lists

815. One
 - 815.1. Two
 - 815.1.1. Three
 - 815.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 815.1.3. Five

816. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcxxix. One
mdcxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxxxii. We now resume our normal programming
mdcxxxiii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

817. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

818. Two

Multi-level Lists

817. One

817.1. Two

817.1.1. Three

817.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

817.1.3. Five

818. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcxxxiii. One

mdcxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxxxvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

819. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
820. Two

Multi-level Lists

819. One
 - 819.1. Two
 - 819.1.1. Three
 - 819.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 819.1.3. Five
 820. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcxxxvii. One
mdcxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
mdcxl. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 821. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 822. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 821. One
 - 821.1. Two
 - 821.1.1. Three
 - 821.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 821.1.3. Five

- 822. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcxli. One
- mdcxlii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdcxliii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcxliv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

823. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
824. Two

Multi-level Lists

823. One
 - 823.1. Two
 - 823.1.1. Three
 - 823.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 823.1.3. Five

824. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcxlv. One

mdcxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdcxlviii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

825. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

826. Two

Multi-level Lists

825. One

825.1. Two

825.1.1. Three

825.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

825.1.3. Five

826. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcxlix. One

mdcl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcli. We now resume our normal programming

mdclii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

827. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
828. Two

Multi-level Lists

827. One
 - 827.1. Two
 - 827.1.1. Three
 - 827.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 827.1.3. Five
 828. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcliii. One

mdcliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclv. We now resume our normal programming

mdclvi. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

829. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
830. Two

Multi-level Lists

829. One
- 829.1. Two
- 829.1.1. Three
- 829.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 829.1.3. Five

830. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdclvii. One
- mdclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdclix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdclx. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

831. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
832. Two

Multi-level Lists

831. One
 - 831.1. Two
 - 831.1.1. Three
 - 831.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 831.1.3. Five
 832. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdclxi. One

mdclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mdclxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Town					

Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
---------	-----	---------	---------	---------	-----	-----

						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For

example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>

<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One

-
- Two

Numbered List

- 833. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 834. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 833. One
 - 833.1. Two
 - 833.1.1. Three
 - 833.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 833.1.3. Five

- 834. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdclxv. One
- mdclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdclxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdclxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

835. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
836. Two

Multi-level Lists

835. One
 - 835.1. Two
 - 835.1.1. Three
 - 835.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 835.1.3. Five
 836. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdclxix. One
mdclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclxxi. We now resume our normal programming
mdclxxii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

837. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

838. Two

Multi-level Lists

837. One

837.1. Two

837.1.1. Three

837.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

837.1.3. Five

838. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdclxxiii. One

mdclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdclxxvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

839. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
840. Two

Multi-level Lists

839. One
 - 839.1. Two
 - 839.1.1. Three
 - 839.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 839.1.3. Five
 840. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdclxxvii. One
mdclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
mdclxxx. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

841. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

842. Two

Multi-level Lists

841. One

841.1. Two

841.1.1. Three

841.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

841.1.3. Five

842. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdclxxxi. One

mdclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mdclxxxiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

843. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
844. Two

Multi-level Lists

843. One
 - 843.1. Two
 - 843.1.1. Three
 - 843.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 843.1.3. Five
 844. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdclxxxv. One
mdclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
mdclxxxviii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 845. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 846. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 845. One
 - 845.1. Two
 - 845.1.1. Three
 - 845.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 845.1.3. Five
 - 846. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdclxxxix. One
- mdcxc. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdxcxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mdxcxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

847. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
848. Two

Multi-level Lists

847. One
 - 847.1. Two
 - 847.1.1. Three
 - 847.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 847.1.3. Five
 848. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdxciii. One
mdxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdxcv. We now resume our normal programming
mdxcvi. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 849. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 850. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 849. One
 - 849.1. Two
 - 849.1.1. Three
 - 849.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 849.1.3. Five
 - 850. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdxcvii. One
- mdxcviii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcc. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

851. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
852. Two

Multi-level Lists

851. One
 - 851.1. Two
 - 851.1.1. Three
 - 851.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 851.1.3. Five

852. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdcci. One
- mdccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcciii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcciv. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleterd List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

853. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

854. Two

Multi-level Lists

853. One

853.1. Two

853.1.1. Three

853.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

853.1.3. Five

854. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdccv. One

mdccvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdccviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

855. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
856. Two

Multi-level Lists

855. One
 - 855.1. Two
 - 855.1.1. Three
 - 855.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 855.1.3. Five
 856. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccix. One

mdccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdccxii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

857. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

858. Two

Multi-level Lists

857. One

857.1. Two

857.1.1. Three

857.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

857.1.3. Five

858. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdccxiii. One

mdccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdccxvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

859. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
860. Two

Multi-level Lists

859. One
 - 859.1. Two
 - 859.1.1. Three
 - 859.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 859.1.3. Five
 860. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccxvii. One
mdccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxix. We now resume our normal programming
mdccxx. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleeted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 861. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 862. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 861. One
 - 861.1. Two
 - 861.1.1. Three
 - 861.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 861.1.3. Five
 - 862. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccxxi. One
- mdccxxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccxxiv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 2	13 3	14 4	15 5
16 6	17	18 8	19 9	20 0	21 1	22 2
23 3	24	25 5	26 6	27 7	28 8	29 9
30 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

863. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
864. Two

Multi-level Lists

863. One
 - 863.1. Two
 - 863.1.1. Three
 - 863.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 863.1.3. Five
 864. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccxxv. One
mdccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
mdccxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

865. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

866. Two

Multi-level Lists

865. One

865.1. Two

865.1.1. Three

865.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

865.1.3. Five

866. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdccxxix. One

mdccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdccxxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to

display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

867. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
868. Two

Multi-level Lists

867. One
 - 867.1. Two
 - 867.1.1. Three
 - 867.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 867.1.3. Five

868. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccxxxiii. One
mdccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
mdccxxxvi. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

869. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
870. Two

Multi-level Lists

869. One
- 869.1. Two
- 869.1.1. Three
- 869.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 869.1.3. Five
870. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccxxxvii. One
- mdccxxxviii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccxl. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

871. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
872. Two

Multi-level Lists

871. One
 - 871.1. Two
 - 871.1.1. Three
 - 871.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 871.1.3. Five

872. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccxli. One

mdccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mdccxliv. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 873. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 874. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 873. One
 - 873.1. Two
 - 873.1.1. Three
 - 873.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 873.1.3. Five
 - 874. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccxlv. One
- mdccxlv. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccxlviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

875. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
876. Two

Multi-level Lists

875. One
 - 875.1. Two
 - 875.1.1. Three
 - 875.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 875.1.3. Five
 876. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccxlix. One
mdccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccli. We now resume our normal programming
mdcclii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

877. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

878. Two

Multi-level Lists

877. One

877.1. Two

877.1.1. Three

877.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

877.1.3. Five

878. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdccliii. One

mdccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclv. We now resume our normal programming

mdcclvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

879. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
880. Two

Multi-level Lists

879. One
 - 879.1. Two
 - 879.1.1. Three
 - 879.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 879.1.3. Five
 880. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcclvii. One
mdcclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclix. We now resume our normal programming
mdcclx. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

881. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

882. Two

Multi-level Lists

881. One

881.1. Two

881.1.1. Three

881.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

881.1.3. Five

882. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxi. One

mdcclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mdcclxiv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

883. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
884. Two

Multi-level Lists

883. One
 - 883.1. Two
 - 883.1.1. Three
 - 883.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 883.1.3. Five
 884. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxv. One

mdcclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mdcclxviii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats” on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

885. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

886. Two

Multi-level Lists

885. One

885.1. Two

885.1.1. Three

885.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

885.1.3. Five

886. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxix. One

mdcclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdcclxxii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

887. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
888. Two

Multi-level Lists

887. One
 - 887.1. Two
 - 887.1.1. Three
 - 887.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 887.1.3. Five
 888. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxxiii. One
mdcclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
mdcclxxvi. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even `i` and `m`. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	<i>2</i>
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	<i>2</i>
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Links</i>	<i>5</i>
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>5</i>
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

889. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

890. Two

Multi-level Lists

889. One

889.1. Two

889.1.1. Three

889.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

889.1.3. Five

890. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxxvii. One

mdcclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mdcclxxx. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

891. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
892. Two

Multi-level Lists

891. One
 - 891.1. Two
 - 891.1.1. Three
 - 891.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 891.1.3. Five

892. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxxxi. One
mdcclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
mdcclxxxiv. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than

inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			

Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat 1

2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleter List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 893. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 894. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 893. One
 - 893.1. Two
 - 893.1.1. Three
 - 893.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 893.1.3. Five
 - 894. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcclxxxv. One
- mdcclxxxvi. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdcclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcclxxxviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	
	Three	Four	

To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre..... 1

Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

895. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
896. Two

Multi-level Lists

895. One
 - 895.1. Two
 - 895.1.1. Three
 - 895.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 895.1.3. Five
 896. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item

-
- Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcclxxxix. One
mdccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxci. We now resume our normal programming
mdccxcii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

897. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
898. Two

Multi-level Lists

897. One
 - 897.1. Two
 - 897.1.1. Three
 - 897.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 897.1.3. Five
 898. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccxciii. One
- mdccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccxcv. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccxcvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

899. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
900. Two

Multi-level Lists

899. One
- 899.1. Two

-
- 899.1.1. Three
- 899.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 899.1.3. Five
900. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccxcvii. One

mdccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mdccc. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 1	13 2	14 3	15 4
16 1 6	17	18 1 8	19 1 9	20 2 0	21 2 1	22 2 2
23 2 3	24	25 2 5	26 2 6	27 2 7	28 2 8	29 2 9
30 3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

901. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
902. Two

Multi-level Lists

901. One
 - 901.1. Two
 - 901.1.1. Three
 - 901.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 901.1.3. Five
 902. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccci. One
- mdcccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccciii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccciv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

903. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
904. Two

Multi-level Lists

903. One
- 903.1. Two

-
- 903.1.1. Three
- 903.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 903.1.3. Five
904. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccv. One
- mdccvii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdcccviii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccviiii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

905. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
906. Two

Multi-level Lists

905. One
 - 905.1. Two
 - 905.1.1. Three
 - 905.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 905.1.3. Five
 906. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccix. One
- mdcccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

907. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
908. Two

Multi-level Lists

907. One
- 907.1. Two

-
- 907.1.1. Three
- 907.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 907.1.3. Five
908. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcccxiii. One

mdcccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcccxv. We now resume our normal programming

mdcccxvi. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

909. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
910. Two

Multi-level Lists

909. One
 - 909.1. Two
 - 909.1.1. Three
 - 909.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 909.1.3. Five
 910. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxvii. One
- mdcccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxx. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

911. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
912. Two

Multi-level Lists

911. One
- 911.1. Two

-
- 911.1.1. Three
- 911.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 911.1.3. Five
912. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxxi. One
- mdcccxxii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdcccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxxiv. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

913. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
914. Two

Multi-level Lists

913. One
 - 913.1. Two
 - 913.1.1. Three
 - 913.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 913.1.3. Five
 914. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxxv. One
- mdcccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxxviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

915. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
916. Two

Multi-level Lists

915. One
- 915.1. Two

-
- 915.1.1. Three
- 915.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 915.1.3. Five
916. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcccxxix. One

mdcccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdcccxxxii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

917. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
918. Two

Multi-level Lists

917. One
 - 917.1. Two
 - 917.1.1. Three
 - 917.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 917.1.3. Five
 918. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxxxiii. One
- mdcccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxxxvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

919. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
920. Two

Multi-level Lists

919. One
- 919.1. Two

-
- 919.1.1. Three
- 919.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 919.1.3. Five
920. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxxxvii. One
- mdcccxxxviii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdcccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxl. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

921. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
922. Two

Multi-level Lists

921. One
 - 921.1. Two
 - 921.1.1. Three
 - 921.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 921.1.3. Five
 922. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccccli. One
- mdccccli. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccccli. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccccli. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

923. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
924. Two

Multi-level Lists

923. One
- 923.1. Two

-
- 923.1.1. Three
- 923.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 923.1.3. Five
924. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxliv. One
- mdcccxlvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdcccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxlvi. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

925. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
926. Two

Multi-level Lists

925. One
 - 925.1. Two
 - 925.1.1. Three
 - 925.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 925.1.3. Five
 926. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccclix. One
- mdcccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccli. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

927. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
928. Two

Multi-level Lists

927. One
- 927.1. Two

-
- 927.1.1. Three
- 927.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 927.1.3. Five
928. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcccliii. One

mdcccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccclv. We now resume our normal programming

mdccclvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

929. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
930. Two

Multi-level Lists

929. One
- 929.1. Two
- 929.1.1. Three
- 929.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 929.1.3. Five
930. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclvii. One
- mdccclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccclix. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

931. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
932. Two

Multi-level Lists

931. One
 - 931.1. Two

-
- 931.1.1. Three
- 931.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 931.1.3. Five
932. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclxi. One
- mdccclxii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdccclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclxiv. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

933. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
934. Two

Multi-level Lists

933. One
- 933.1. Two
- 933.1.1. Three
- 933.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 933.1.3. Five
934. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclxv. One
- mdccclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccclxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclxviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

935. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
936. Two

Multi-level Lists

935. One
- 935.1. Two

-
- 935.1.1. Three
- 935.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 935.1.3. Five
936. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccclxix. One

mdccclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mdccclxxii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

937. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
938. Two

Multi-level Lists

937. One
 - 937.1. Two
 - 937.1.1. Three
 - 937.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 937.1.3. Five
 938. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclxxiii. One
- mdccclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclxxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

939. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
940. Two

Multi-level Lists

939. One
- 939.1. Two

-
- 939.1.1. Three
- 939.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 939.1.3. Five
940. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdccclxxvii. One

mdccclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdccclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mdccclxxx. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

941. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
942. Two

Multi-level Lists

941. One
 - 941.1. Two
 - 941.1.1. Three
 - 941.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 941.1.3. Five
 942. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclxxxi. One
- mdccclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdccclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclxxxiv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

943. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
944. Two

Multi-level Lists

943. One
 - 943.1. Two

-
- 943.1.1. Three
- 943.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 943.1.3. Five
944. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclxxxv. One
- mdccclxxxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mdccclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mdccclxxxviii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

945. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
946. Two

Multi-level Lists

945. One
 - 945.1. Two
 - 945.1.1. Three
 - 945.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 945.1.3. Five
 946. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdccclxxxix. One
- mdcccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mdcccxcii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

947. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
948. Two

Multi-level Lists

947. One
 - 947.1. Two

-
- 947.1.1. Three
- 947.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 947.1.3. Five
948. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mdcccxciii. One

mdcccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mdcccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mdcccxcvi. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

949. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
950. Two

Multi-level Lists

949. One
 - 949.1. Two
 - 949.1.1. Three
 - 949.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 949.1.3. Five
 950. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mdcccxcvii. One
- mdcccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mdcccxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcm. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

951. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
952. Two

Multi-level Lists

951. One
- 951.1. Two

-
- 951.1.1. Three
- 951.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 951.1.3. Five
952. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmi. One
- mcmii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmiv. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

953. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
954. Two

Multi-level Lists

953. One
- 953.1. Two
- 953.1.1. Three
- 953.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 953.1.3. Five
954. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmv. One
- mcmvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

955. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
956. Two

Multi-level Lists

955. One
- 955.1. Two

-
- 955.1.1. Three
- 955.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 955.1.3. Five
956. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcmix. One

mcmx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcmxi. We now resume our normal programming

mcmxii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

957. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
958. Two

Multi-level Lists

957. One
 - 957.1. Two
 - 957.1.1. Three
 - 957.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 957.1.3. Five
 958. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxiii. One
- mcmxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

959. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
960. Two

Multi-level Lists

959. One
- 959.1. Two

-
- 959.1.1. Three
- 959.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 959.1.3. Five
960. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxvii. One
- mcmxviii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

961. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
962. Two

Multi-level Lists

961. One
 - 961.1. Two
 - 961.1.1. Three
 - 961.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 961.1.3. Five
 962. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxxi. One
- mcmxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

963. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
964. Two

Multi-level Lists

963. One
- 963.1. Two

-
- 963.1.1. Three
- 963.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 963.1.3. Five
964. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxxv. One
- mcmxxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxxviii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

965. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
966. Two

Multi-level Lists

965. One
- 965.1. Two
- 965.1.1. Three
- 965.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 965.1.3. Five
966. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxxix. One
- mcmxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxxxii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

967. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
968. Two

Multi-level Lists

967. One
- 967.1. Two

-
- 967.1.1. Three
- 967.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 967.1.3. Five
968. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcmxxxiii. One

mcmxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcmxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mcmxxxvi. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

969. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
970. Two

Multi-level Lists

969. One
 - 969.1. Two
 - 969.1.1. Three
 - 969.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 969.1.3. Five
 970. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxxxvii. One
- mcmxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxl. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

971. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
972. Two

Multi-level Lists

971. One
 - 971.1. Two

-
- 971.1.1. Three
- 971.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 971.1.3. Five
972. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxli. One
- mcmxlii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmxlili. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxliv. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

973. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
974. Two

Multi-level Lists

973. One
- 973.1. Two
- 973.1.1. Three
- 973.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 973.1.3. Five
974. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxliv. One
- mcmxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxlviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

975. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
976. Two

Multi-level Lists

975. One
 - 975.1. Two

-
- 975.1.1. Three
- 975.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 975.1.3. Five
976. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxlix. One
- mcml. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcml. We now resume our normal programming
- mcml.ii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

977. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
978. Two

Multi-level Lists

977. One
 - 977.1. Two
 - 977.1.1. Three
 - 977.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 977.1.3. Five
 978. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmliii. One
- mcmliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmlv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

979. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
980. Two

Multi-level Lists

979. One
- 979.1. Two

-
- 979.1.1. Three
- 979.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 979.1.3. Five
980. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcmlvii. One

mcmlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcmlix. We now resume our normal programming

mcmlx. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

981. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
982. Two

Multi-level Lists

981. One
 - 981.1. Two
 - 981.1.1. Three
 - 981.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 981.1.3. Five
 982. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxi. One
- mcmlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxiv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

983. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
984. Two

Multi-level Lists

983. One
- 983.1. Two

-
- 983.1.1. Three
- 983.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 983.1.3. Five
984. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxv. One
- mcmlxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmlxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxviii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

985. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
986. Two

Multi-level Lists

985. One
 - 985.1. Two
 - 985.1.1. Three
 - 985.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 985.1.3. Five
 986. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxix. One
- mcmlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmlxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxxii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

987. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
988. Two

Multi-level Lists

987. One
- 987.1. Two

-
- 987.1.1. Three
- 987.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 987.1.3. Five
988. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxxiii. One
- mcmlxxiv. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmlxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxxvi. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

989. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
990. Two

Multi-level Lists

989. One
 - 989.1. Two
 - 989.1.1. Three
 - 989.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 989.1.3. Five
 990. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxxvii. One
- mcmlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmlxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

991. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
992. Two

Multi-level Lists

991. One
 - 991.1. Two

-
- 991.1.1. Three
- 991.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 991.1.3. Five
992. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxxxi. One
- mcmlxxxii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 2	13 3	14 4	15 5
16 6	17	18 8	19 9	20 0	21 1	22 2
23 3	24	25 5	26 6	27 7	28 8	29 9
30 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

993. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
994. Two

Multi-level Lists

993. One
- 993.1. Two
- 993.1.1. Three
- 993.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 993.1.3. Five
994. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmlxxxv. One
- mcmlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmlxxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

995. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
996. Two

Multi-level Lists

995. One
- 995.1. Two

-
- 995.1.1. Three
- 995.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 995.1.3. Five
996. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

mcmlxxxix. One

mcmxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcmxci. We now resume our normal programming

mcmxcii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

997. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
998. Two

Multi-level Lists

997. One
 - 997.1. Two
 - 997.1.1. Three
 - 997.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 997.1.3. Five
 998. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxciii. One
- mcmxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mcmxcv. We now resume our normal programming
- mcmxcvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

999. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1000. Two

Multi-level Lists

999. One
- 999.1. Two

-
- 999.1.1. Three
- 999.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 999.1.3. Five
1000. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mcmxcvii. One
- mcmxcviii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mcmxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- mm. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1001. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1002. Two

Multi-level Lists

1001. One
 - 1001.1. Two
 - 1001.1.1. Three
 - 1001.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1001.1.3. Five

1002. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmi. One

mmii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1003. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1004. Two

Multi-level Lists

1003. One
- 1003.1. Two

1003.1.1. Three

1003.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1003.1.3. Five

1004. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmv. One

mmvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmviii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1005. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1006. Two

Multi-level Lists

1005. One
 - 1005.1. Two
 - 1005.1.1. Three
 - 1005.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1005.1.3. Five
 1006. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmix. One
- mmx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1007. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1008. Two

Multi-level Lists

1007. One
- 1007.1. Two

1007.1.1. Three

1007.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1007.1.3. Five

1008. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxiii. One

mmxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmxvi. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1009. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1010. Two

Multi-level Lists

1009. One
 - 1009.1. Two
 - 1009.1.1. Three
 - 1009.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1009.1.3. Five
 1010. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmxvii. One
- mmxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmxx. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1011. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1012. Two

Multi-level Lists

1011. One
 - 1011.1. Two

-
- 1011.1.1. Three
- 1011.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1011.1.3. Five
1012. Six
- A Multi-level list with bullets:
- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
 - Five

Continued Lists

- mmxxi. One
- mmxxii. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmxxiv. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1013. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1014. Two

Multi-level Lists

1013. One
- 1013.1. Two
- 1013.1.1. Three
- 1013.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1013.1.3. Five

1014. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxxv. One

mmxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmxxviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1015. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1016. Two

Multi-level Lists

1015. One
- 1015.1. Two

1015.1.1. Three

1015.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1015.1.3. Five

1016. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxxix. One

mmxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmxxxii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1017. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1018. Two

Multi-level Lists

1017. One
- 1017.1. Two
- 1017.1.1. Three
- 1017.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1017.1.3. Five

1018. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxxxiii. One

mmxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmxxxvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1019. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1020. Two

Multi-level Lists

1019. One
- 1019.1. Two

1019.1.1. Three

1019.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1019.1.3. Five

1020. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxxxvii. One

mmxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmxl. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1021. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1022. Two

Multi-level Lists

1021. One
- 1021.1. Two
- 1021.1.1. Three
- 1021.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1021.1.3. Five
1022. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmxli. One
- mmxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmxlili. We now resume our normal programming
- mmxliv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1023. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1024. Two

Multi-level Lists

1023. One
- 1023.1. Two

1023.1.1. Three

1023.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1023.1.3. Five

1024. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxliv. One

mmxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmxlvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1025. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1026. Two

Multi-level Lists

1025. One
 - 1025.1. Two
 - 1025.1.1. Three
 - 1025.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1025.1.3. Five
1026. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxlix. One

mml. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mml. We now resume our normal programming

mml.ii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1027. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1028. Two

Multi-level Lists

1027. One
- 1027.1. Two
- 1027.1.1. Three
- 1027.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1027.1.3. Five

1028. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmliii. One

mmliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlv. We now resume our normal programming

mmlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1029. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1030. Two

Multi-level Lists

1029. One
 - 1029.1. Two
 - 1029.1.1. Three
 - 1029.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1029.1.3. Five
1030. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlvii. One

mmlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlix. We now resume our normal programming

mmlx. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1031. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1032. Two

Multi-level Lists

1031. One
 - 1031.1. Two
 - 1031.1.1. Three
 - 1031.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1031.1.3. Five

1032. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmlxi. One
- mmlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmlxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1033. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1034. Two

Multi-level Lists

1033. One
 - 1033.1. Two
 - 1033.1.1. Three
 - 1033.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1033.1.3. Five
1034. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxv. One

mmlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmlxviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1035. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1036. Two

Multi-level Lists

1035. One
- 1035.1. Two
- 1035.1.1. Three
- 1035.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1035.1.3. Five

1036. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxix. One

mmlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmlxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1037. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1038. Two

Multi-level Lists

1037. One
 - 1037.1. Two
 - 1037.1.1. Three
 - 1037.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1037.1.3. Five
1038. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxxiii. One

mmlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmlxxvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1039. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1040. Two

Multi-level Lists

1039. One
- 1039.1. Two
- 1039.1.1. Three
- 1039.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1039.1.3. Five

1040. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxxvii. One

mmlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmlxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1041. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1042. Two

Multi-level Lists

1041. One
 - 1041.1. Two
 - 1041.1.1. Three
 - 1041.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1041.1.3. Five
1042. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxxxii. One

mmlxxxiii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlxxxiiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmlxxxv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1043. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1044. Two

Multi-level Lists

1043. One
 - 1043.1. Two
 - 1043.1.1. Three
 - 1043.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1043.1.3. Five

1044. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxxxv. One

mmlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmlxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1045. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1046. Two

Multi-level Lists

1045. One
 - 1045.1. Two
 - 1045.1.1. Three
 - 1045.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1045.1.3. Five
1046. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmlxxxix. One

mmxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxci. We now resume our normal programming

mmxcii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1047. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1048. Two

Multi-level Lists

1047. One
 - 1047.1. Two
 - 1047.1.1. Three
 - 1047.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1047.1.3. Five

1048. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxciii. One

mmxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mmxcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1049. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1050. Two

Multi-level Lists

1049. One
 - 1049.1. Two
 - 1049.1.1. Three
 - 1049.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1049.1.3. Five
1050. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmxcvii. One

mmxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmc. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1051. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1052. Two

Multi-level Lists

1051. One
 - 1051.1. Two
 - 1051.1.1. Three
 - 1051.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1051.1.3. Five

1052. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmci. One

mmcii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmciii. We now resume our normal programming

mmciv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1053. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1054. Two

Multi-level Lists

1053. One
 - 1053.1. Two
 - 1053.1.1. Three
 - 1053.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1053.1.3. Five
1054. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcv. One

mmcvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1055. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1056. Two

Multi-level Lists

1055. One
- 1055.1. Two
- 1055.1.1. Three
- 1055.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1055.1.3. Five

1056. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcix. One

mmcx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxiii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1057. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1058. Two

Multi-level Lists

1057. One
 - 1057.1. Two
 - 1057.1.1. Three
 - 1057.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1057.1.3. Five
1058. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxiii. One

mmcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1059. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1060. Two

Multi-level Lists

1059. One
- 1059.1. Two
- 1059.1.1. Three
- 1059.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1059.1.3. Five
1060. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcxvii. One
- mmcxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1061. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1062. Two

Multi-level Lists

1061. One
 - 1061.1. Two
 - 1061.1.1. Three
 - 1061.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1061.1.3. Five
1062. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxxi. One

mmcxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxxiv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1063. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1064. Two

Multi-level Lists

1063. One
- 1063.1. Two
- 1063.1.1. Three
- 1063.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1063.1.3. Five

1064. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxxv. One

mmcxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1065. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1066. Two

Multi-level Lists

1065. One
 - 1065.1. Two
 - 1065.1.1. Three
 - 1065.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1065.1.3. Five
1066. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxxix. One

mmcxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxxxii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1067. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1068. Two

Multi-level Lists

1067. One
 - 1067.1. Two
 - 1067.1.1. Three
 - 1067.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1067.1.3. Five

1068. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxxxiii. One

mmcxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1069. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1070. Two

Multi-level Lists

1069. One
 - 1069.1. Two
 - 1069.1.1. Three
 - 1069.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1069.1.3. Five
1070. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxxxvii. One

mmcxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxl. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1071. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1072. Two

Multi-level Lists

1071. One
 - 1071.1. Two
 - 1071.1.1. Three
 - 1071.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1071.1.3. Five

1072. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxli. One

mmcxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxliii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxliv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1073. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1074. Two

Multi-level Lists

1073. One
 - 1073.1. Two
 - 1073.1.1. Three
 - 1073.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1073.1.3. Five
1074. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxlv. One

mmcxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxlviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1075. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1076. Two

Multi-level Lists

1075. One
 - 1075.1. Two
 - 1075.1.1. Three
 - 1075.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1075.1.3. Five

1076. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcxlix. One
- mmcl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcli. We now resume our normal programming
- mmclii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1077. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1078. Two

Multi-level Lists

1077. One
 - 1077.1. Two
 - 1077.1.1. Three
 - 1077.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1077.1.3. Five
 1078. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcliii. One

mmcliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclv. We now resume our normal programming

mmclvi. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1079. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1080. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1079. One
 - 1079.1. Two
 - 1079.1.1. Three
 - 1079.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1079.1.3. Five

- 1080. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclvii. One

mmclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclix. We now resume our normal programming

mmclx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1081. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1082. Two

Multi-level Lists

1081. One
 - 1081.1. Two
 - 1081.1.1. Three
 - 1081.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1081.1.3. Five
1082. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxi. One

mmclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxiv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1083. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

1084. Two

Multi-level Lists

1083. One

1083.1. Two

1083.1.1. Three

1083.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1083.1.3. Five

1084. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxv. One

mmclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1085. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1086. Two

Multi-level Lists

1085. One
 - 1085.1. Two
 - 1085.1.1. Three
 - 1085.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1085.1.3. Five
1086. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxix. One

mmclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1087. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1088. Two

Multi-level Lists

1087. One
- 1087.1. Two
- 1087.1.1. Three
- 1087.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1087.1.3. Five

1088. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxiii. One

mmclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1089. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1090. Two

Multi-level Lists

1089. One
- 1089.1. Two

1089.1.1. Three

1089.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1089.1.3. Five

1090. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxvii. One

mmclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1091. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1092. Two

Multi-level Lists

1091. One
- 1091.1. Two
- 1091.1.1. Three
- 1091.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1091.1.3. Five
1092. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmclxxxi. One
- mmclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmclxxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1093. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1094. Two

Multi-level Lists

1093. One
 - 1093.1. Two
 - 1093.1.1. Three
 - 1093.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1093.1.3. Five
1094. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxxv. One

mmclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxxviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1095. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1096. Two

Multi-level Lists

1095. One
 - 1095.1. Two
 - 1095.1.1. Three
 - 1095.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1095.1.3. Five

1096. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmclxxxix. One
- mmcx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcxci. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1097. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1098. Two

Multi-level Lists

1097. One
 - 1097.1. Two
 - 1097.1.1. Three
 - 1097.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1097.1.3. Five
1098. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcxiii. One

mmcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1099. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1100. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1099. One
 - 1099.1. Two
 - 1099.1.1. Three
 - 1099.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1099.1.3. Five

- 1100. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcxvii. One
- mmcxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcc. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1101. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1102. Two

Multi-level Lists

1101. One
 - 1101.1. Two
 - 1101.1.1. Three
 - 1101.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1101.1.3. Five
1102. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcci. One

mmccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcciii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcciv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1103. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1104. Two

Multi-level Lists

1103. One
 - 1103.1. Two
 - 1103.1.1. Three
 - 1103.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1103.1.3. Five

1104. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccv. One

mmccvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmccviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1105. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1106. Two

Multi-level Lists

1105. One
 - 1105.1. Two
 - 1105.1.1. Three
 - 1105.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1105.1.3. Five
1106. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccix. One

mmccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1107. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

1108. Two

Multi-level Lists

1107. One

1107.1. Two

1107.1.1. Three

1107.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1107.1.3. Five

1108. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxiii. One

mmccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1109. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1110. Two

Multi-level Lists

1109. One
 - 1109.1. Two
 - 1109.1.1. Three
 - 1109.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1109.1.3. Five
 1110. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxvii. One

mmccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxx. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1111. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1112. Two

Multi-level Lists

1111. One
 - 1111.1. Two
 - 1111.1.1. Three
 - 1111.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1111.1.3. Five

1112. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxxi. One

mmccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1113. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1114. Two

Multi-level Lists

1113. One
 - 1113.1. Two
 - 1113.1.1. Three
 - 1113.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1113.1.3. Five
1114. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxxv. One

mmccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxxviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1115. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1116. Two

Multi-level Lists

1115. One
- 1115.1. Two
- 1115.1.1. Three
- 1115.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1115.1.3. Five

1116. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxxix. One

mmccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1117. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1118. Two

Multi-level Lists

1117. One
 - 1117.1. Two
 - 1117.1.1. Three
 - 1117.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1117.1.3. Five
1118. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxxxiii. One

mmccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxxxvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1119. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1120. Two

Multi-level Lists

1119. One
- 1119.1. Two
- 1119.1.1. Three
- 1119.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1119.1.3. Five

1120. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxxxvii. One

mmccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxl. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1121. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1122. Two

Multi-level Lists

1121. One
 - 1121.1. Two
 - 1121.1.1. Three
 - 1121.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1121.1.3. Five
 1122. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxli. One

mmccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxliv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1123. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1124. Two

Multi-level Lists

1123. One
- 1123.1. Two
- 1123.1.1. Three
- 1123.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1123.1.3. Five
1124. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmccxlv. One
- mmccxlv. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmccxlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1125. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1126. Two

Multi-level Lists

1125. One
 - 1125.1. Two
 - 1125.1.1. Three
 - 1125.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1125.1.3. Five
1126. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxlix. One

mmcl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcli. We now resume our normal programming

mmclii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1127. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

1128. Two

Multi-level Lists

1127. One

1127.1. Two

1127.1.1. Three

1127.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1127.1.3. Five

1128. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcliii. One

mmcliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclv. We now resume our normal programming

mmclvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1129. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1130. Two

Multi-level Lists

1129. One
 - 1129.1. Two
 - 1129.1.1. Three
 - 1129.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1129.1.3. Five
1130. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclvii. One

mmclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclix. We now resume our normal programming

mmclx. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1131. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1132. Two

Multi-level Lists

1131. One
 - 1131.1. Two
 - 1131.1.1. Three
 - 1131.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1131.1.3. Five

1132. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcclxi. One
- mmcclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcclxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1133. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1134. Two

Multi-level Lists

1133. One
 - 1133.1. Two
 - 1133.1.1. Three
 - 1133.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1133.1.3. Five
1134. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxv. One

mmclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1135. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1136. Two

Multi-level Lists

1135. One
- 1135.1. Two
- 1135.1.1. Three
- 1135.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1135.1.3. Five

1136. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxix. One

mmclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1137. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1138. Two

Multi-level Lists

1137. One
 - 1137.1. Two
 - 1137.1.1. Three
 - 1137.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1137.1.3. Five
1138. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxiii. One

mmclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1139. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1140. Two

Multi-level Lists

1139. One
- 1139.1. Two
- 1139.1.1. Three
- 1139.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1139.1.3. Five

1140. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxvii. One

mmclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1141. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1142. Two

Multi-level Lists

1141. One
 - 1141.1. Two
 - 1141.1.1. Three
 - 1141.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1141.1.3. Five
1142. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxxi. One

mmclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxxiv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1143. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1144. Two

Multi-level Lists

1143. One
- 1143.1. Two
- 1143.1.1. Three
- 1143.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1143.1.3. Five

1144. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxxv. One

mmclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmclxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1145. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1146. Two

Multi-level Lists

1145. One
 - 1145.1. Two
 - 1145.1.1. Three
 - 1145.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1145.1.3. Five
1146. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmclxxxix. One

mmccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxci. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxcii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1147. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1148. Two

Multi-level Lists

1147. One
- 1147.1. Two
- 1147.1.1. Three
- 1147.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1147.1.3. Five

1148. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxciii. One

mmccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mmccxcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1149. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1150. Two

Multi-level Lists

1149. One
 - 1149.1. Two
 - 1149.1.1. Three
 - 1149.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1149.1.3. Five
1150. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccxcvii. One

mmccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmccc. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1151. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1152. Two

Multi-level Lists

1151. One
 - 1151.1. Two
 - 1151.1.1. Three
 - 1151.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1151.1.3. Five

1152. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccci. One

mmccci. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccciii. We now resume our normal programming

mmccciv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

	One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Three	Four	

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1153. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1154. Two

Multi-level Lists

1153. One
- 1153.1. Two
- 1153.1.1. Three
- 1153.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1153.1.3. Five
1154. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcccv. One
- mmccvvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmcccvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcccviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1155. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1156. Two

Multi-level Lists

1155. One
- 1155.1. Two

1155.1.1. Three

1155.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1155.1.3. Five

1156. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccix. One

mmcccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1157. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1158. Two

Multi-level Lists

1157. One
- 1157.1. Two
- 1157.1.1. Three
- 1157.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1157.1.3. Five

1158. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccciii. One

mmccciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1159. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1160. Two

Multi-level Lists

1159. One
- 1159.1. Two

1159.1.1. Three

1159.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1159.1.3. Five

1160. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxvii. One

mmcccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxx. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1161. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1162. Two

Multi-level Lists

1161. One
 - 1161.1. Two
 - 1161.1.1. Three
 - 1161.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1161.1.3. Five

1162. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxi. One

mmcccxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1163. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1164. Two

Multi-level Lists

1163. One
- 1163.1. Two

1163.1.1. Three

1163.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1163.1.3. Five

1164. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxxv. One

mmcccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxxviii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1165. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1166. Two

Multi-level Lists

1165. One
 - 1165.1. Two
 - 1165.1.1. Three
 - 1165.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1165.1.3. Five

1166. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcccxxix. One
- mmcccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcccxxxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1167. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1168. Two

Multi-level Lists

1167. One
 - 1167.1. Two

1167.1.1. Three

1167.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1167.1.3. Five

1168. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxxxiii. One

mmcccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxxxvi. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1169. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1170. Two

Multi-level Lists

1169. One
- 1169.1. Two
- 1169.1.1. Three
- 1169.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1169.1.3. Five

1170. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxxxvii. One

mmcccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxl. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1171. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1172. Two

Multi-level Lists

1171. One
 - 1171.1. Two

1171.1.1. Three

1171.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1171.1.3. Five

1172. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccccli. One

mmccccli. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccccli. We now resume our normal programming

mmccccli. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1173. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1174. Two

Multi-level Lists

1173. One
 - 1173.1. Two
 - 1173.1.1. Three
 - 1173.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1173.1.3. Five

1174. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxlvi. One

mmcccxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxlvi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1175. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1176. Two

Multi-level Lists

1175. One
- 1175.1. Two

1175.1.1. Three

1175.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1175.1.3. Five

1176. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccclix. One

mmcccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccli. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccli. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1177. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1178. Two

Multi-level Lists

1177. One
 - 1177.1. Two
 - 1177.1.1. Three
 - 1177.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1177.1.3. Five

1178. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccliii. One

mmcccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccclv. We now resume our normal programming

mmccclvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1179. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1180. Two

Multi-level Lists

1179. One
- 1179.1. Two

1179.1.1. Three

1179.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1179.1.3. Five

1180. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccclvii. One

mmccclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccclix. We now resume our normal programming

mmccclx. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1181. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1182. Two

Multi-level Lists

1181. One
 - 1181.1. Two
 - 1181.1.1. Three
 - 1181.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1181.1.3. Five
 1182. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmccclxi. One
- mmccclxii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmccclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmccclxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1183. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1184. Two

Multi-level Lists

1183. One
- 1183.1. Two

1183.1.1. Three

1183.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1183.1.3. Five

1184. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccclxv. One

mmccclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmccclxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1185. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1186. Two

Multi-level Lists

1185. One
 - 1185.1. Two
 - 1185.1.1. Three
 - 1185.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1185.1.3. Five

1186. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmccclxix. One
- mmccclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmccclxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmccclxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1187. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1188. Two

Multi-level Lists

1187. One
- 1187.1. Two

1187.1.1. Three

1187.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1187.1.3. Five

1188. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccclxxiii. One

mmccclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmccclxxvi. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1189. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1190. Two

Multi-level Lists

1189. One
 - 1189.1. Two
 - 1189.1.1. Three
 - 1189.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1189.1.3. Five
 1190. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmccclxxvii. One
- mmccclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmccclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmccclxxx. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1191. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1192. Two

Multi-level Lists

1191. One
 - 1191.1. Two

1191.1.1. Three

1191.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1191.1.3. Five

1192. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccclxxxi. One

mmccclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmccclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmccclxxxiv. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1193. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1194. Two

Multi-level Lists

1193. One
- 1193.1. Two
- 1193.1.1. Three
- 1193.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1193.1.3. Five
1194. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmccclxxxv. One
- mmccclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmccclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmccclxxxviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1195. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1196. Two

Multi-level Lists

1195. One
- 1195.1. Two

1195.1.1. Three

1195.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1195.1.3. Five

1196. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmccclxxxix. One

mmcccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxcii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1197. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1198. Two

Multi-level Lists

1197. One
- 1197.1. Two
- 1197.1.1. Three
- 1197.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1197.1.3. Five

1198. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxciii. One

mmcccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcccxcvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1199. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1200. Two

Multi-level Lists

1199. One
- 1199.1. Two

1199.1.1. Three

1199.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1199.1.3. Five

1200. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcccxcvii. One

mmcccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcccxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcd. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1201. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1202. Two

Multi-level Lists

1201. One
 - 1201.1. Two
 - 1201.1.1. Three
 - 1201.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1201.1.3. Five

1202. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdi. One

mmcdii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdiv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1203. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1204. Two

Multi-level Lists

1203. One
- 1203.1. Two

1203.1.1. Three

1203.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1203.1.3. Five

1204. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdv. One

mmcdvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdviii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1205. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1206. Two

Multi-level Lists

1205. One
- 1205.1. Two
- 1205.1.1. Three
- 1205.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1205.1.3. Five

1206. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdix. One

mmcdx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1207. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1208. Two

Multi-level Lists

1207. One
- 1207.1. Two

1207.1.1. Three

1207.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1207.1.3. Five

1208. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxiii. One

mmcdxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxvi. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 1	13 2	14 3	15 4
16 1 6	17	18 1 8	19 1 9	20 2 0	21 2 1	22 2 2
23 2 3	24	25 2 5	26 2 6	27 2 7	28 2 8	29 2 9
30 3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1209. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1210. Two

Multi-level Lists

1209. One
- 1209.1. Two
- 1209.1.1. Three
- 1209.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1209.1.3. Five
1210. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcdxvii. One
- mmcdxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcdxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcdxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1211. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1212. Two

Multi-level Lists

1211. One
 - 1211.1. Two

1211.1.1. Three

1211.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1211.1.3. Five

1212. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxxi. One

mmcdxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxxiv. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1213. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1214. Two

Multi-level Lists

1213. One
- 1213.1. Two
- 1213.1.1. Three
- 1213.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1213.1.3. Five

1214. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxxv. One

mmcdxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1215. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1216. Two

Multi-level Lists

1215. One
- 1215.1. Two

1215.1.1. Three

1215.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1215.1.3. Five

1216. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxxix. One

mmcdxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxxxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1217. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1218. Two

Multi-level Lists

1217. One
- 1217.1. Two
- 1217.1.1. Three
- 1217.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1217.1.3. Five

1218. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxxxiii. One

mmcdxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxxxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1219. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1220. Two

Multi-level Lists

1219. One
- 1219.1. Two

1219.1.1. Three

1219.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1219.1.3. Five

1220. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxxxvii. One

mmcdxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxl. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1221. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1222. Two

Multi-level Lists

1221. One
- 1221.1. Two
- 1221.1.1. Three
- 1221.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1221.1.3. Five

1222. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxli. One

mmcdxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxliii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxliv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1223. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1224. Two

Multi-level Lists

1223. One
- 1223.1. Two

1223.1.1. Three

1223.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1223.1.3. Five

1224. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxlv. One

mmcdxlv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxlviii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1225. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1226. Two

Multi-level Lists

1225. One
- 1225.1. Two
- 1225.1.1. Three
- 1225.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1225.1.3. Five

1226. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxlix. One

mmcdl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdli. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1227. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1228. Two

Multi-level Lists

1227. One
 - 1227.1. Two

1227.1.1. Three

1227.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1227.1.3. Five

1228. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdliii. One

mmcdliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdlv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlvi. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1229. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1230. Two

Multi-level Lists

1229. One
- 1229.1. Two
- 1229.1.1. Three
- 1229.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1229.1.3. Five
1230. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcdlvii. One
- mmcdlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcdlix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcdlx. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1231. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1232. Two

Multi-level Lists

1231. One
 - 1231.1. Two

1231.1.1. Three

1231.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1231.1.3. Five

1232. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdlxi. One

mmcdlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdlxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlxiv. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1233. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1234. Two

Multi-level Lists

1233. One
 - 1233.1. Two
 - 1233.1.1. Three
 - 1233.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1233.1.3. Five
 1234. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcdlxv. One
 - mmcdlxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmcdlxvii. We now resume our normal programming
 - mmcdlxviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1235. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1236. Two

Multi-level Lists

1235. One
- 1235.1. Two

1235.1.1. Three

1235.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1235.1.3. Five

1236. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdlxix. One

mmcdlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlxxii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1237. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1238. Two

Multi-level Lists

1237. One
 - 1237.1. Two
 - 1237.1.1. Three
 - 1237.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1237.1.3. Five
 1238. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcdlxxiii. One
- mmcdlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcdlxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcdlxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1239. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1240. Two

Multi-level Lists

1239. One
- 1239.1. Two

1239.1.1. Three

1239.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1239.1.3. Five

1240. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdlxxvii. One

mmcdlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdlxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlxxx. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1241. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1242. Two

Multi-level Lists

1241. One
 - 1241.1. Two
 - 1241.1.1. Three
 - 1241.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1241.1.3. Five

1242. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdlxxxi. One

mmcdlxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlxxxiv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1243. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1244. Two

Multi-level Lists

1243. One
- 1243.1. Two

1243.1.1. Three

1243.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1243.1.3. Five

1244. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdlxxxv. One

mmcdlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdlxxxviii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1245. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1246. Two

Multi-level Lists

1245. One
 - 1245.1. Two
 - 1245.1.1. Three
 - 1245.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1245.1.3. Five

1246. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdlxxxix. One

mmcdxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxci. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1247. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1248. Two

Multi-level Lists

1247. One
- 1247.1. Two

1247.1.1. Three

1247.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1247.1.3. Five

1248. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxciii. One

mmcdxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcdxcvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1249. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1250. Two

Multi-level Lists

1249. One
 - 1249.1. Two
 - 1249.1.1. Three
 - 1249.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1249.1.3. Five

1250. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcdxcvii. One

mmcdxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcdxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmd. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1251. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1252. Two

Multi-level Lists

1251. One
- 1251.1. Two

1251.1.1. Three

1251.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1251.1.3. Five

1252. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdi. One

mmdii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdiv. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1253. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1254. Two

Multi-level Lists

1253. One
- 1253.1. Two
- 1253.1.1. Three
- 1253.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1253.1.3. Five

1254. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdv. One

mmdvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1255. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1256. Two

Multi-level Lists

1255. One
- 1255.1. Two

1255.1.1. Three

1255.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1255.1.3. Five

1256. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdix. One

mmdx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1257. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1258. Two

Multi-level Lists

1257. One
- 1257.1. Two
- 1257.1.1. Three
- 1257.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1257.1.3. Five

1258. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxiii. One

mmdxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1259. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1260. Two

Multi-level Lists

1259. One
- 1259.1. Two

1259.1.1. Three

1259.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1259.1.3. Five

1260. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxvii. One

mmdxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxx. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1261. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1262. Two

Multi-level Lists

1261. One
- 1261.1. Two
- 1261.1.1. Three
- 1261.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1261.1.3. Five

1262. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxxi. One

mmdxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxxiv. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1263. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1264. Two

Multi-level Lists

1263. One
- 1263.1. Two

1263.1.1. Three

1263.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1263.1.3. Five

1264. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxxv. One

mmdxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxxviii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1265. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1266. Two

Multi-level Lists

1265. One
- 1265.1. Two
- 1265.1.1. Three
- 1265.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1265.1.3. Five

1266. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxxix. One

mmdxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxxxii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1267. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1268. Two

Multi-level Lists

1267. One
- 1267.1. Two

1267.1.1. Three

1267.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1267.1.3. Five

1268. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxxxiii. One

mmdxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxxxvi. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1269. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1270. Two

Multi-level Lists

1269. One
- 1269.1. Two
- 1269.1.1. Three
- 1269.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1269.1.3. Five
1270. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdxxxvii. One
- mmdxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1271. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1272. Two

Multi-level Lists

1271. One
 - 1271.1. Two

1271.1.1. Three

1271.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1271.1.3. Five

1272. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxli. One

mmdxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxliv. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1273. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1274. Two

Multi-level Lists

1273. One
- 1273.1. Two
- 1273.1.1. Three
- 1273.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1273.1.3. Five
1274. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdxlv. One
- mmdxlvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmdxlvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdxlviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1275. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1276. Two

Multi-level Lists

1275. One
- 1275.1. Two

1275.1.1. Three

1275.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1275.1.3. Five

1276. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxlix. One

mmdl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdli. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1277. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1278. Two

Multi-level Lists

1277. One
- 1277.1. Two
- 1277.1.1. Three
- 1277.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1277.1.3. Five

1278. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdl.iii. One

mmdl.iiii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdl.v. We now resume our normal programming

mmdl.vi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1279. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1280. Two

Multi-level Lists

1279. One
- 1279.1. Two

1279.1.1. Three

1279.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1279.1.3. Five

1280. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlvii. One

mmdlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdlix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1281. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1282. Two

Multi-level Lists

1281. One
- 1281.1. Two
- 1281.1.1. Three
- 1281.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1281.1.3. Five

1282. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlxi. One

mmdlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdlxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1283. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1284. Two

Multi-level Lists

1283. One
- 1283.1. Two

1283.1.1. Three

1283.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1283.1.3. Five

1284. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlxv. One

mmdlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlxviii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1285. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1286. Two

Multi-level Lists

1285. One
 - 1285.1. Two
 - 1285.1.1. Three
 - 1285.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1285.1.3. Five

1286. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdlxix. One
- mmdlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdlxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdlxxii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1287. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1288. Two

Multi-level Lists

1287. One
- 1287.1. Two

1287.1.1. Three

1287.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1287.1.3. Five

1288. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlxxiii. One

mmdlxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdlxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlxxvi. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1289. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1290. Two

Multi-level Lists

1289. One
- 1289.1. Two
- 1289.1.1. Three
- 1289.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1289.1.3. Five
1290. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdlxxvii. One
- mmdlxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdlxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdlxxx. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1291. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1292. Two

Multi-level Lists

1291. One
 - 1291.1. Two

1291.1.1. Three

1291.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1291.1.3. Five

1292. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlxxxi. One

mmdlxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdlxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlxxxiv. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1293. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1294. Two

Multi-level Lists

1293. One
- 1293.1. Two
- 1293.1.1. Three
- 1293.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1293.1.3. Five

1294. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlxxxv. One

mmdlxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdlxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdlxxxviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1295. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1296. Two

Multi-level Lists

1295. One
- 1295.1. Two

1295.1.1. Three

1295.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1295.1.3. Five

1296. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdlxxxix. One

mmdxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxci. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxcii. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1297. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1298. Two

Multi-level Lists

1297. One
- 1297.1. Two
- 1297.1.1. Three
- 1297.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1297.1.3. Five

1298. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxciii. One

mmdxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdxcvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1299. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1300. Two

Multi-level Lists

1299. One
- 1299.1. Two

1299.1.1. Three

1299.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1299.1.3. Five

1300. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdxcvii. One

mmdxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdc. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1301. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1302. Two

Multi-level Lists

1301. One
 - 1301.1. Two
 - 1301.1.1. Three
 - 1301.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1301.1.3. Five
 1302. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdci. One
- mmdcii. Two
 - An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmdciii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdciv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1303. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1304. Two

Multi-level Lists

1303. One
- 1303.1. Two

1303.1.1. Three

1303.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1303.1.3. Five

1304. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcv. One

mmdcvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcviii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1305. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1306. Two

Multi-level Lists

1305. One
- 1305.1. Two
- 1305.1.1. Three
- 1305.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1305.1.3. Five
1306. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcix. One
- mmdcx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcxii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1307. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1308. Two

Multi-level Lists

1307. One
- 1307.1. Two

1307.1.1. Three

1307.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1307.1.3. Five

1308. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxiii. One

mmdcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxvi. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1309. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1310. Two

Multi-level Lists

1309. One
- 1309.1. Two
- 1309.1.1. Three
- 1309.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1309.1.3. Five
1310. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcxvii. One
- mmdcxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1311. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1312. Two

Multi-level Lists

1311. One
 - 1311.1. Two

1311.1.1. Three

1311.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1311.1.3. Five

1312. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxxi. One

mmdcxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 2	13 3	14 4	15 5
16 6	17	18 8	19 9	20 0	21 1	22 2
23 3	24	25 5	26 6	27 7	28 8	29 9
30 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1313. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1314. Two

Multi-level Lists

1313. One
- 1313.1. Two
- 1313.1.1. Three
- 1313.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1313.1.3. Five
1314. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcxxv. One
- mmdcxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcxxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1315. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1316. Two

Multi-level Lists

1315. One
- 1315.1. Two

1315.1.1. Three

1315.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1315.1.3. Five

1316. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxxix. One

mmdcxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxxxii. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11 1	12 2	13 3	14 4	15 5
16 6	17	18 8	19 9	20 0	21 1	22 2
23 3	24	25 5	26 6	27 7	28 8	29 9
30 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1317. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1318. Two

Multi-level Lists

1317. One
- 1317.1. Two
- 1317.1.1. Three
- 1317.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1317.1.3. Five

1318. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxxxiii. One

mmdcxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxxxvi. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1319. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1320. Two

Multi-level Lists

1319. One
- 1319.1. Two

1319.1.1. Three

1319.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1319.1.3. Five

1320. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxxxvii. One

mmdcxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxl. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1321. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1322. Two

Multi-level Lists

1321. One
- 1321.1. Two
- 1321.1.1. Three
- 1321.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1321.1.3. Five
1322. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcxli. One
- mmdcxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcxliii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcxliv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1323. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1324. Two

Multi-level Lists

1323. One
- 1323.1. Two

1323.1.1. Three

1323.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1323.1.3. Five

1324. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxlv. One

mmdcxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxlviii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1325. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1326. Two

Multi-level Lists

1325. One
- 1325.1. Two
- 1325.1.1. Three
- 1325.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1325.1.3. Five

1326. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxlix. One

mmdcl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcli. We now resume our normal programming

mmdclii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1327. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1328. Two

Multi-level Lists

1327. One
- 1327.1. Two

1327.1.1. Three

1327.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1327.1.3. Five

1328. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcliii. One

mmdcliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdclv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdclvi. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1329. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1330. Two

Multi-level Lists

1329. One
- 1329.1. Two
- 1329.1.1. Three
- 1329.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1329.1.3. Five
1330. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdclvii. One
- mmdclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdclix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdclx. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1331. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1332. Two

Multi-level Lists

1331. One
 - 1331.1. Two

1331.1.1. Three

1331.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1331.1.3. Five

1332. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdclxi. One

mmdclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdclxiv. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1333. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1334. Two

Multi-level Lists

1333. One
- 1333.1. Two
- 1333.1.1. Three
- 1333.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1333.1.3. Five
1334. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdclxv. One
- mmdclxvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmdclxvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdclxviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1335. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1336. Two

Multi-level Lists

1335. One
- 1335.1. Two

1335.1.1. Three

1335.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1335.1.3. Five

1336. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdclxix. One

mmdclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdclxxii. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1337. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1338. Two

Multi-level Lists

1337. One
- 1337.1. Two
- 1337.1.1. Three
- 1337.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1337.1.3. Five
1338. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdclxxiii. One
- mmdclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdclxxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdclxxvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1339. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1340. Two

Multi-level Lists

1339. One
- 1339.1. Two

1339.1.1. Three

1339.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1339.1.3. Five

1340. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdclxxvii. One

mmdclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdclxxx. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1341. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1342. Two

Multi-level Lists

1341. One
 - 1341.1. Two
 - 1341.1.1. Three
 - 1341.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1341.1.3. Five
 1342. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdclxxxi. One
- mmdclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdclxxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1343. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1344. Two

Multi-level Lists

1343. One
- 1343.1. Two

1343.1.1. Three

1343.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1343.1.3. Five

1344. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdclxxxv. One

mmdclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdclxxxviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1345. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1346. Two

Multi-level Lists

1345. One
 - 1345.1. Two
 - 1345.1.1. Three
 - 1345.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1345.1.3. Five

1346. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdclxxxix. One
- mmdcxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdxcxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdxcxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in **inverse video**.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1347. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1348. Two

Multi-level Lists

1347. One
- 1347.1. Two

1347.1.1. Three

1347.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1347.1.3. Five

1348. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcxiii. One

mmdcxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcxvi. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1349. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1350. Two

Multi-level Lists

1349. One
 - 1349.1. Two
 - 1349.1.1. Three
 - 1349.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1349.1.3. Five
 1350. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdxcvii. One
- mmdxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdxcix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcc. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1351. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1352. Two

Multi-level Lists

1351. One
 - 1351.1. Two

1351.1.1. Three

1351.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1351.1.3. Five

1352. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcci. One

mmdccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcciii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcciv. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1353. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1354. Two

Multi-level Lists

1353. One
- 1353.1. Two
- 1353.1.1. Three
- 1353.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1353.1.3. Five
1354. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdccv. One
- mmdccvi. Two
- An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.
- mmdccvii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdccviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1355. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1356. Two

Multi-level Lists

1355. One
- 1355.1. Two

1355.1.1. Three

1355.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1355.1.3. Five

1356. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccix. One

mmdccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxii. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1357. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1358. Two

Multi-level Lists

1357. One
- 1357.1. Two
- 1357.1.1. Three
- 1357.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1357.1.3. Five
1358. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdccxiii. One
- mmdccxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdccxv. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdccxvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1359. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1360. Two

Multi-level Lists

1359. One
- 1359.1. Two

1359.1.1. Three

1359.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1359.1.3. Five

1360. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxvii. One

mmdccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxx. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1361. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1362. Two

Multi-level Lists

1361. One
 - 1361.1. Two
 - 1361.1.1. Three
 - 1361.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1361.1.3. Five

1362. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxxi. One

mmdccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxxiv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1363. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1364. Two

Multi-level Lists

1363. One
- 1363.1. Two

1363.1.1. Three

1363.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1363.1.3. Five

1364. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxxv. One

mmdccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxxviii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1365. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1366. Two

Multi-level Lists

1365. One
- 1365.1. Two
- 1365.1.1. Three
- 1365.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1365.1.3. Five

1366. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxxix. One

mmdccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxxxii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1367. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1368. Two

Multi-level Lists

1367. One
- 1367.1. Two

1367.1.1. Three

1367.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1367.1.3. Five

1368. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxxxiii. One

mmdccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxxxvi. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1369. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1370. Two

Multi-level Lists

1369. One
- 1369.1. Two
- 1369.1.1. Three
- 1369.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1369.1.3. Five
1370. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdccxxxvii. One
- mmdccxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdccxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1371. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1372. Two

Multi-level Lists

1371. One
- 1371.1. Two

1371.1.1. Three

1371.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1371.1.3. Five

1372. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxli. One

mmdccxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxliv. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1373. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1374. Two

Multi-level Lists

1373. One
- 1373.1. Two
- 1373.1.1. Three
- 1373.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1373.1.3. Five

1374. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxlv. One

mmdccxlv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1375. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1376. Two

Multi-level Lists

1375. One
- 1375.1. Two

1375.1.1. Three

1375.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1375.1.3. Five

1376. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxlix. One

mmdccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccli. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1377. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1378. Two

Multi-level Lists

1377. One
- 1377.1. Two
- 1377.1.1. Three
- 1377.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1377.1.3. Five

1378. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccliii. One

mmdccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcclv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1379. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1380. Two

Multi-level Lists

1379. One
- 1379.1. Two

1379.1.1. Three

1379.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1379.1.3. Five

1380. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcclvii. One

mmdcclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcclix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclx. Four

4:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1381. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1382. Two

Multi-level Lists

1381. One
 - 1381.1. Two
 - 1381.1.1. Three
 - 1381.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1381.1.3. Five
 1382. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcclxi. One
- mmdcclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcclxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcclxiv. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1383. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1384. Two

Multi-level Lists

1383. One
- 1383.1. Two

1383.1.1. Three

1383.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1383.1.3. Five

1384. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcclxv. One

mmdcclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclxviii. Four

6:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1385. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1386. Two

Multi-level Lists

1385. One
 - 1385.1. Two
 - 1385.1.1. Three
 - 1385.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1385.1.3. Five
 1386. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcclxix. One
- mmdcclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcclxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcclxxii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1387. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1388. Two

Multi-level Lists

1387. One
- 1387.1. Two

1387.1.1. Three

1387.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1387.1.3. Five

1388. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcclxxiii. One

mmdcclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclxxvi. Four

8:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1389. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1390. Two

Multi-level Lists

1389. One
- 1389.1. Two
- 1389.1.1. Three
- 1389.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1389.1.3. Five
1390. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdcclxxvii. One
- mmdcclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdcclxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdcclxxx. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1391. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1392. Two

Multi-level Lists

1391. One
 - 1391.1. Two

1391.1.1. Three

1391.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1391.1.3. Five

1392. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcclxxxi. One

mmdcclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclxxxiv. Four

12:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1393. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1394. Two

Multi-level Lists

1393. One
- 1393.1. Two
- 1393.1.1. Three
- 1393.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1393.1.3. Five

1394. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcclxxxv. One

mmdcclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcclxxxviii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1395. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1396. Two

Multi-level Lists

1395. One
- 1395.1. Two

1395.1.1. Three

1395.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1395.1.3. Five

1396. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcclxxxix. One

mmdccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxci. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccxcii. Four

14:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1397. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1398. Two

Multi-level Lists

1397. One
 - 1397.1. Two
 - 1397.1.1. Three
 - 1397.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1397.1.3. Five
 1398. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmdccxciii. One
- mmdccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmdccxcv. We now resume our normal programming
- mmdccxcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1399. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1400. Two

Multi-level Lists

1399. One
- 1399.1. Two

1399.1.1. Three

1399.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1399.1.3. Five

1400. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccxcvii. One

mmdccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccc. Four

16;

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1401. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1402. Two

Multi-level Lists

1401. One
 - 1401.1. Two
 - 1401.1.1. Three
 - 1401.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1401.1.3. Five

1402. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccci. One

mmdccii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcciii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccciv. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1403. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1404. Two

Multi-level Lists

1403. One
- 1403.1. Two

1403.1.1. Three

1403.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1403.1.3. Five

1404. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccv. One

mmdccvii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccviii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccviiii. Four

18:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1405. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1406. Two

Multi-level Lists

1405. One
- 1405.1. Two
- 1405.1.1. Three
- 1405.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1405.1.3. Five

1406. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccix. One

mmdcccx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1407. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1408. Two

Multi-level Lists

1407. One
- 1407.1. Two

1407.1.1. Three

1407.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1407.1.3. Five

1408. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccciii. One

mmdccciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1409. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1410. Two

Multi-level Lists

1409. One
 - 1409.1. Two
 - 1409.1.1. Three
 - 1409.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1409.1.3. Five
 1410. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxvii. One

mmdcccxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1411. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1412. Two

Multi-level Lists

1411. One
 - 1411.1. Two
 - 1411.1.1. Three
 - 1411.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1411.1.3. Five

1412. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxxi. One

mmdcccxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1413. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1414. Two

Multi-level Lists

1413. One
 - 1413.1. Two
 - 1413.1.1. Three
 - 1413.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1413.1.3. Five
 1414. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxxv. One

mmdcccxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxxviii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1415. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1416. Two

Multi-level Lists

1415. One
- 1415.1. Two
- 1415.1.1. Three
- 1415.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1415.1.3. Five

1416. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxxix. One

mmdcccxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1417. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1418. Two

Multi-level Lists

1417. One
 - 1417.1. Two
 - 1417.1.1. Three
 - 1417.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1417.1.3. Five
1418. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxxxiii. One

mmdcccxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxxxvi. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1419. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1420. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1419. One
 - 1419.1. Two
 - 1419.1.1. Three
 - 1419.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1419.1.3. Five

1420. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxxvii. One

mmdcccxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1421. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1422. Two

Multi-level Lists

1421. One
 - 1421.1. Two
 - 1421.1.1. Three
 - 1421.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1421.1.3. Five
1422. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccccli. One

mmdccccli. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccccli. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccccli. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1423. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1424. Two

Multi-level Lists

1423. One
 - 1423.1. Two
 - 1423.1.1. Three
 - 1423.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1423.1.3. Five

1424. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxlvi. One

mmdcccxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxlvi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1425. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1426. Two

Multi-level Lists

1425. One
 - 1425.1. Two
 - 1425.1.1. Three
 - 1425.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1425.1.3. Five
1426. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxlx. One

mmdcccl. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccli. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclii. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1427. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1428. Two

Multi-level Lists

1427. One
- 1427.1. Two
- 1427.1.1. Three
- 1427.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1427.1.3. Five

1428. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccliii. One

mmdcccliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1429. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1430. Two

Multi-level Lists

1429. One
 - 1429.1. Two
 - 1429.1.1. Three
 - 1429.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1429.1.3. Five
1430. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclvii. One

mmdccclviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclx. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1431. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1432. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1431. One
 - 1431.1. Two
 - 1431.1.1. Three
 - 1431.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1431.1.3. Five

1432. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxi. One

mmdccclxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1433. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1434. Two

Multi-level Lists

1433. One
 - 1433.1. Two
 - 1433.1.1. Three
 - 1433.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1433.1.3. Five
1434. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxv. One

mmdccclxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxviii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1435. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1436. Two

Multi-level Lists

1435. One
- 1435.1. Two
- 1435.1.1. Three
- 1435.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1435.1.3. Five

1436. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxix. One

mmdccclxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1437. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1438. Two

Multi-level Lists

1437. One
 - 1437.1. Two
 - 1437.1.1. Three
 - 1437.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1437.1.3. Five
1438. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxxiii. One

mmdccclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxxvi. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1439. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1440. Two

Multi-level Lists

1439. One
- 1439.1. Two
- 1439.1.1. Three
- 1439.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1439.1.3. Five

1440. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxxvii. One

mmdccclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxxx. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1441. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1442. Two

Multi-level Lists

1441. One
 - 1441.1. Two
 - 1441.1.1. Three
 - 1441.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1441.1.3. Five
1442. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxxxi. One

mmdccclxxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxxxiv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1443. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1444. Two

Multi-level Lists

1443. One
 - 1443.1. Two
 - 1443.1.1. Three
 - 1443.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1443.1.3. Five

1444. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxxxv. One

mmdccclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdccclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmdccclxxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1445. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1446. Two

Multi-level Lists

1445. One
 - 1445.1. Two
 - 1445.1.1. Three
 - 1445.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1445.1.3. Five
1446. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdccclxxxix. One

mmdcccxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxcii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1447. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1448. Two

Multi-level Lists

1447. One
 - 1447.1. Two
 - 1447.1.1. Three
 - 1447.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1447.1.3. Five

1448. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxciii. One

mmdcccxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mmdcccxcvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1449. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1450. Two

Multi-level Lists

1449. One
 - 1449.1. Two
 - 1449.1.1. Three
 - 1449.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1449.1.3. Five
1450. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmdcccxcvii. One

mmdcccxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmdcccxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcm. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1451. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1452. Two

Multi-level Lists

1451. One
 - 1451.1. Two
 - 1451.1.1. Three
 - 1451.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1451.1.3. Five

1452. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmi. One

mmcmii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1453. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1454. Two

Multi-level Lists

1453. One
 - 1453.1. Two
 - 1453.1.1. Three
 - 1453.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1453.1.3. Five
1454. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmv. One

mmcmvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmviii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1455. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1456. Two

Multi-level Lists

1455. One
 - 1455.1. Two
 - 1455.1.1. Three
 - 1455.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1455.1.3. Five

1456. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmix. One

mmcmx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1457. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1458. Two

Multi-level Lists

1457. One
 - 1457.1. Two
 - 1457.1.1. Three
 - 1457.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1457.1.3. Five
1458. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxiii. One

mmcmxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxvi. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1459. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1460. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1459. One
 - 1459.1. Two
 - 1459.1.1. Three
 - 1459.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1459.1.3. Five

1460. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxvii. One

mmcmxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxx. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1461. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1462. Two

Multi-level Lists

1461. One
 - 1461.1. Two
 - 1461.1.1. Three
 - 1461.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1461.1.3. Five
1462. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxxi. One

mmcmxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxxiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxxiv. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1463. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1464. Two

Multi-level Lists

1463. One
 - 1463.1. Two
 - 1463.1.1. Three
 - 1463.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1463.1.3. Five

1464. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxxv. One

mmcmxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1465. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1466. Two

Multi-level Lists

1465. One
 - 1465.1. Two
 - 1465.1.1. Three
 - 1465.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1465.1.3. Five
1466. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxxix. One

mmcmxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxxxii. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1467. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1468. Two

Multi-level Lists

1467. One
 - 1467.1. Two
 - 1467.1.1. Three
 - 1467.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1467.1.3. Five

1468. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxxxiii. One

mmcmxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1469. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1470. Two

Multi-level Lists

1469. One
 - 1469.1. Two
 - 1469.1.1. Three
 - 1469.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1469.1.3. Five
1470. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxxxvii. One

mmcmxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxl. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1471. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1472. Two

Multi-level Lists

1471. One
 - 1471.1. Two
 - 1471.1.1. Three
 - 1471.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1471.1.3. Five

1472. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxli. One

mmcmxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxlili. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxliv. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
<i>Undergraduate</i>			
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
<i>Graduate</i>			
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2

2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents


There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1473. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1474. Two

Multi-level Lists

1473. One
 - 1473.1. Two

1473.1.1. Three

1473.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1473.1.3. Five

1474. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxlvi. One

mmcmxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxlvi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmxlvi. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1475. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1476. Two

Multi-level Lists

1475. One
 - 1475.1. Two
 - 1475.1.1. Three
 - 1475.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1475.1.3. Five

1476. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxlix. One

mmcml. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmli. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmlii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **"Add Books"** button and then click **"Convert"**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **"OK"**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1477. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1478. Two

Multi-level Lists

1477. One
 - 1477.1. Two
 - 1477.1.1. Three
 - 1477.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1477.1.3. Five
1478. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmliii. One

mmcmliiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmlii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmlii. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Numbered List</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	<i>8</i>
<i>Continued Lists</i>	<i>8</i>

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1479. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1480. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1479. One
 - 1479.1. Two
 - 1479.1.1. Three
 - 1479.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1479.1.3. Five

1480. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmlii. One

mmcmliii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmlii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmlii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1481. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1482. Two

Multi-level Lists

1481. One
 - 1481.1. Two
 - 1481.1.1. Three
 - 1481.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1481.1.3. Five
1482. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmli. One

mmcmlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmliiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmlixiv. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1483. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

1484. Two

Multi-level Lists

1483. One

1483.1. Two

1483.1.1. Three

1483.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1483.1.3. Five

1484. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmlxv. One

mmcmlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmlxviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1485. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1486. Two

Multi-level Lists

1485. One
 - 1485.1. Two
 - 1485.1.1. Three
 - 1485.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1485.1.3. Five
1486. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmlxix. One

mmcmlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmlxxii. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1487. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1488. Two

Multi-level Lists

1487. One
 - 1487.1. Two
 - 1487.1.1. Three
 - 1487.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1487.1.3. Five

1488. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmclxxiii. One

mmcmclxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmclxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmclxxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1489. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1490. Two

Multi-level Lists

1489. One
 - 1489.1. Two
 - 1489.1.1. Three
 - 1489.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1489.1.3. Five
1490. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmclxxvii. One

mmcmclxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmclxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmclxxx. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1491. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1492. Two

Multi-level Lists

1491. One
- 1491.1. Two
- 1491.1.1. Three
- 1491.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1491.1.3. Five

1492. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmclxxxix. One

mmcmclxxxix. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmclxxxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmclxxxix. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1493. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1494. Two

Multi-level Lists

1493. One
 - 1493.1. Two
 - 1493.1.1. Three
 - 1493.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1493.1.3. Five
1494. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmclxxxv. One

mmcmclxxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmclxxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmcmclxxxviii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1495. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1496. Two

Multi-level Lists

1495. One
 - 1495.1. Two
 - 1495.1.1. Three
 - 1495.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1495.1.3. Five

1496. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmcmclxxxix. One
- mmcmxc. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmcmxci. We now resume our normal programming
- mmcmxcii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1497. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1498. Two

Multi-level Lists

1497. One
 - 1497.1. Two
 - 1497.1.1. Three
 - 1497.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1497.1.3. Five
1498. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mcmxciii. One

mcmxciv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mcmxcv. We now resume our normal programming

mcmxcvi. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1499. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1500. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1499. One
 - 1499.1. Two
 - 1499.1.1. Three
 - 1499.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1499.1.3. Five

- 1500. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmcmxcvii. One

mmcmxcviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmcmxcix. We now resume our normal programming

mmm. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1501. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1502. Two

Multi-level Lists

1501. One
 - 1501.1. Two
 - 1501.1.1. Three
 - 1501.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1501.1.3. Five
1502. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmi. One

mmmii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmmiii. We now resume our normal programming

mmmmiv. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1503. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1504. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1503. One
 - 1503.1. Two
 - 1503.1.1. Three
 - 1503.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1503.1.3. Five

1504. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmv. One

mmmvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmmviii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1505. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1506. Two

Multi-level Lists

1505. One
 - 1505.1. Two
 - 1505.1.1. Three
 - 1505.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1505.1.3. Five
1506. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmix. One

mmmx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmx. We now resume our normal programming

mmmxii. Four

ⁱⁱ Endnotes are typically used for longer notes, they remain endnotes when converted into ebook form, except that they have an additional backlink to make it easy to return to the current position after reading the note.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck-out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of

limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5

<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleated List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in

ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1507. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1508. Two

Multi-level Lists

1507. One
- 1507.1. Two
- 1507.1.1. Three
- 1507.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1507.1.3. Five

1508. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxiii. One

mmmxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmmxvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1509. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly

1510. Two

Multi-level Lists

1509. One

1509.1. Two

1509.1.1. Three

1509.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.

1509.1.3. Five

1510. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxvii. One

mmmxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmxix. We now resume our normal programming

mmmx. Four

5:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1511. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1512. Two

Multi-level Lists

1511. One
 - 1511.1. Two
 - 1511.1.1. Three
 - 1511.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1511.1.3. Five

1512. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmmxxi. One
- mmmxxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmmxxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmmxxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1513. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1514. Two

Multi-level Lists

1513. One
 - 1513.1. Two
 - 1513.1.1. Three
 - 1513.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1513.1.3. Five
1514. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxxv. One

mmmxxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmxxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmmxxviii. Four

7:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1515. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1516. Two

Multi-level Lists

1515. One
 - 1515.1. Two
 - 1515.1.1. Three
 - 1515.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1515.1.3. Five

1516. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmmxxix. One
- mmmxxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmmxxxi. We now resume our normal programming
- mmmxxxii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and ***intense emphasis***. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1517. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1518. Two

Multi-level Lists

1517. One
 - 1517.1. Two
 - 1517.1.1. Three
 - 1517.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1517.1.3. Five
1518. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxxxiii. One

mmmxxxiv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmxxxv. We now resume our normal programming

mmmxxxvi. Four

10:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

- 1519. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
- 1520. Two

Multi-level Lists

- 1519. One
 - 1519.1. Two
 - 1519.1.1. Three
 - 1519.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1519.1.3. Five

- 1520. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmmxxxvii. One
- mmmxxxviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmmxxxix. We now resume our normal programming
- mmmxl. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1521. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1522. Two

Multi-level Lists

1521. One
 - 1521.1. Two
 - 1521.1.1. Three
 - 1521.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1521.1.3. Five
1522. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxli. One

mmmxlii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmxliii. We now resume our normal programming

mmmxliv. Four

13:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1523. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1524. Two

Multi-level Lists

1523. One
- 1523.1. Two
- 1523.1.1. Three
- 1523.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1523.1.3. Five

1524. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxlv. One

mmmxlvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmxlvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmmxlviii. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1525. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1526. Two

Multi-level Lists

1525. One
 - 1525.1. Two
 - 1525.1.1. Three
 - 1525.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1525.1.3. Five
1526. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmxlix. One

mmml. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmkli. We now resume our normal programming

mmmlii. Four

15:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1527. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1528. Two

Multi-level Lists

1527. One
- 1527.1. Two
- 1527.1.1. Three
- 1527.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
- 1527.1.3. Five

1528. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmliii. One

mmmliv. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmlv. We now resume our normal programming

mmmlvi. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “Add Books” button and then click “Convert”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “OK”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting</i>	2
Tables	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1529. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1530. Two

Multi-level Lists

1529. One
 - 1529.1. Two
 - 1529.1.1. Three
 - 1529.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1529.1.3. Five
1530. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmlvii. One

mmmlviii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmlix. We now resume our normal programming

mmmlx. Four

17:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1531. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1532. Two

Multi-level Lists

1531. One
 - 1531.1. Two
 - 1531.1.1. Three
 - 1531.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1531.1.3. Five

1532. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

- mmmlxi. One
- mmmlxii. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

- mmmlxiii. We now resume our normal programming
- mmmlxiv. Four

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the “**Add Books**” button and then click “**Convert**”. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click “**OK**”.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8

	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

rop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5 pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.

If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents</i>	5
Images.....	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List.....</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists.....</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot ●. Inline images do not cause breaks

in the text and are usually small in size.



The next category of image is a

floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1533. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1534. Two

Multi-level Lists

1533. One
 - 1533.1. Two
 - 1533.1.1. Three
 - 1533.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1533.1.3. Five
1534. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmlxv. One

mmmlxvi. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmlxvii. We now resume our normal programming

mmmlxviii. Four

19:

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre

This document demonstrates the ability of the calibre DOCX Input plugin to convert the various typographic features in a Microsoft Word (2007 and newer) document. Convert this document to a modern ebook format, such as AZW3 for Kindles or EPUB for other ebook readers, to see it in action.

There is support for images, tables, lists, footnotes, endnotes, links, dropcaps and various types of text and paragraph level formatting.

To see the DOCX conversion in action, simply add this file to calibre using the **“Add Books”** button and then click **“Convert”**. Set the output format in the top right corner of the conversion dialog to EPUB or AZW3 and click **“OK”**.

Text Formatting

Inline formatting

Here, we demonstrate various types of inline text formatting and the use of embedded fonts.

Here is some **bold**, *italic*, ***bold-italic***, underlined and ~~struck out~~ text. Then, we have a super^{script} and a sub_{script}. Now we see some red, green and blue text. Some text with a yellow highlight. Some text in a box. Some text in inverse video.

A paragraph with styled text: *subtle emphasis* followed by **strong text** and *intense emphasis*. This paragraph uses document wide styles for styling rather than inline text properties as demonstrated in the previous paragraph — calibre can handle both with equal ease.

Fun with fonts

This document has embedded the Ubuntu font family. The body text is in the Ubuntu typeface, here is some text in the Ubuntu Mono typeface, notice how every letter has the same width, even i and m. Every embedded font will automatically be embedded in the output ebook during conversion.

Paragraph level formatting

You can do crazy things with paragraphs, if the urge strikes you. For instance this paragraph is right aligned and has a right border. It has also been given a light gray background.

For the lovers of poetry amongst you, paragraphs with hanging indents, like this often come in handy. You can use hanging indents to ensure that a line of poetry retains its individual identity as a line even when the screen is too narrow to display it as a single line. Not only does this paragraph have a hanging indent, it is also has an extra top margin, setting it apart from the preceding paragraph.

Tables

ITEM	NEEDED
Books	1
Pens	3
Pencils	2
Highlighter	2 colors
Scissors	1 pair

Tables in Word can vary from the extremely simple to the extremely complex. calibre tries to do its best when converting tables. While you may run into trouble with the occasional table, the vast majority of common cases should be converted very well, as demonstrated in this section. Note that for optimum results, when creating tables in Word, you should set their widths using percentages, rather than absolute units. To the left of this paragraph is a floating two column table with a nice green border and header row.

Now let's look at a fancier table—one with alternating row colors and partial borders. This table is stretched out to take 100% of the available width.

City or Town	Point A	Point B	Point C	Point D	Point E
Point A	—				
Point B	87	—			
Point C	64	56	—		
Point D	37	32	91	—	
Point E	93	35	54	43	—

Next, we see a table with special formatting in various locations. Notice how the formatting for the header row and sub header rows is preserved.

College	New students	Graduating students	Change
	<i>Undergraduate</i>		
Cedar University	110	103	+7
Oak Institute	202	210	-8
	<i>Graduate</i>		
Cedar University	24	20	+4
Elm College	43	53	-10
Total	998	908	90

Source: Fictitious data, for illustration purposes only

Next, we have something a little more complex, a nested table, i.e. a table inside another table. Additionally, the inner table has some of its cells merged. The table is displayed horizontally centered.

One	Two	To the left is a table inside a table, with some cells merged.
	Four	
Three		

We end with a fancy calendar, note how much of the original formatting is preserved. Note that this table will only display correctly on relatively wide screens. In general, very wide tables or tables whose cells have fixed width requirements don't fare well in ebooks.

December 2007

Su n	Mon	Tu e	We d	Th u	Fri	Sat
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	1 1	1 2	1 3	1 4	1 5
1 6	17	1 8	1 9	2 0	2 1	2 2
2 3	24	2 5	2 6	2 7	2 8	2 9
3 0	31					

Structural Elements

Miscellaneous structural elements you can add to your document, like footnotes, endnotes, dropcaps and the like.

Footnotes & Endnotes

Footnotesⁱⁱ and endnotesⁱⁱ are automatically recognized and both are converted to endnotes, with backlinks for maximum ease of use in ebook devices.

Dropcaps

D

Drop caps are used to emphasize the leading paragraph at the start of a section. In Word it is possible to specify how many lines of text a drop-cap should use. Because of limitations in ebook technology, this is not possible when converting. Instead, the converted drop cap will use font size and line height to simulate the effect as well as possible. While not as good as the original, the result is usually tolerable. This paragraph has a “D” dropcap set to occupy three lines of text with a font size of 58.5

pts. Depending on the screen width and capabilities of the device you view the book on, this dropcap can look anything from perfect to ugly.

Links

Two kinds of links are possible, those that refer to an external website and those that refer to locations inside the document itself. Both are supported by calibre. For example, here is a link pointing to the [calibre download page](#). Then we have a link that points back to the section on [paragraph level formatting](#) in this document.

Table of Contents

There are two approaches that calibre takes when generating a Table of Contents. The first is if the Word document has a Table of Contents itself. Provided that the Table of Contents uses hyperlinks, calibre will automatically use it. The levels of the Table of Contents are identified by their left indent, so if you want the ebook to have a multi-level Table of Contents, make sure you create a properly indented Table of Contents in Word.


If no Table of Contents is found in the document, then a table of contents is automatically generated from the headings in the document. A heading is identified as something that has the Heading 1 or Heading 2, etc. style applied to it. These headings are turned into a Table of Contents with Heading 1 being the topmost level, Heading 2 the second level and so on.

You can see the Table of Contents created by calibre by clicking the Table of Contents button in whatever viewer you are using to view the converted ebook.

Demonstration of DOCX support in calibre.....	1
Text Formatting	2
<i>Inline formatting.....</i>	2
<i>Fun with fonts.....</i>	2
<i>Paragraph level formatting.....</i>	2
Tables.....	3
Structural Elements	5
<i>Footnotes & Endnotes.....</i>	5
<i>Dropcaps.....</i>	5
<i>Links</i>	5
<i>Table of Contents.....</i>	5

Images	7
Lists	8
<i>Bulleted List</i>	8
<i>Numbered List</i>	8
<i>Multi-level Lists</i>	8
<i>Continued Lists</i>	8

Images

Images can be of three main types. Inline images are images that are part of the normal text flow, like this image of a green dot . Inline images do not cause breaks



in the text and are usually small in size.

The next category of image is a floating image, one that “floats “ on the page and is surrounded by text. Word supports more types of floating images than are possible with current ebook technology, so the conversion maps floating images to simple left and right floats, as you can see with the left and right arrow images on the sides of this paragraph.

The final type of image is a “block” image, one that becomes a paragraph on its own and has no text on either side. Below is a centered green dot.



Centered images like this are useful for large pictures that should be a focus of attention.

Generally, it is not possible to translate the exact positioning of images from a Word document to an ebook. That is because in Word, image positioning is specified in absolute units from the page boundaries. There is no analogous technology in ebooks, so the conversion will usually end up placing the image either centered or floating close to the point in the text where it was *inserted*, not necessarily where it appears on the page in Word.

Lists

All types of lists are supported by the conversion, with the exception of lists that use fancy bullets, these get converted to regular bullets.

Bulleted List

- One
- Two

Numbered List

1535. One, with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly
1536. Two

Multi-level Lists

1535. One
 - 1535.1. Two
 - 1535.1.1. Three
 - 1535.1.2. Four with a very long line to demonstrate that the hanging indent for the list is working correctly.
 - 1535.1.3. Five

1536. Six

A Multi-level list with bullets:

- One
 - Two
 - This bullet uses an image as the bullet item
 - Four
- Five

Continued Lists

mmmlxix. One

mmmlxx. Two

An interruption in our regularly scheduled listing, for this essential and very relevant public service announcement.

mmmlxxi. We now resume our normal programming

mmmlxxii. Four
